



THE
GREAT
COURSES®

Topic
Literature
& Language

Subtopic
Language Learning

Latin 101: Learning a Classical Language

Course Guidebook

Professor Hans-Friedrich Mueller
Union College



PUBLISHED BY:

THE GREAT COURSES

Corporate Headquarters

4840 Westfields Boulevard, Suite 500

Chantilly, Virginia 20151-2299

Phone: 1-800-832-2412

Fax: 703-378-3819

www.thegreatcourses.com

Copyright © The Teaching Company, 2013

Printed in the United States of America

This book is in copyright. All rights reserved.

Without limiting the rights under copyright reserved above,
no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in
or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted,
in any form, or by any means
(electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise),
without the prior written permission of
The Teaching Company.



Hans-Friedrich Mueller, Ph.D.

Thomas B. Lamont Professor of Ancient
and Modern Literature and Chair of the
Department of Classics
Union College

Professor Hans-Friedrich Mueller serves as the Thomas B. Lamont Professor of Ancient and Modern Literature and Chair of the Department of Classics at Union College in Schenectady, New York. Professor Mueller received

his B.A. in Latin from the University of Wisconsin–Milwaukee in 1985 and, for the next six years, taught Latin and German at Countryside High School in Clearwater, Florida. He earned his M.A. from the University of Florida in 1989 and returned to graduate school in 1991, receiving his Ph.D. in 1994 from The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill. Subsequently, Professor Mueller spent a year at the Bavarian Academy of Sciences in Munich, Germany, where he worked on entries for an encyclopedic Latin dictionary, the *Thesaurus Linguae Latinae*.

Under Professor Mueller's direction, the Union College program in Classics has been noted especially for its interdisciplinary curriculum. Professor Mueller received the American Philological Association's Award for Excellence in the Teaching of Classics at the College Level in 2000, as well as two awards for excellence in teaching at Florida State University. At the University of Florida, he developed a graduate distance-learning program in Classics for high school teachers. In addition to numerous articles, Professor Mueller is the author of *Roman Religion in Valerius Maximus*, the editor of an abridged edition of Gibbon's *Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, and the translator of Andreas Mehl's *Roman Historiography: An Introduction to Its Basic Aspects and Development*. He is also the author of *Caesar: Selections from his Commentarii De Bello Gallico* and coauthor of *Caesar: A LEGAMUS Transitional Reader*.

In German, the surname Mueller means “miller.” Both the German surname Mueller and the English surname Miller, however, derive from Molinarius, a Latin word for “miller” and the professor’s preferred pseudonym. ■

Table of Contents

INTRODUCTION

Professor Biography	i
Course Scope	1

LECTURE GUIDES

LECTURE 1

Pronouncing Classical Latin	3
-----------------------------------	---

LECTURE 2

Introduction to Third-Conjugation Verbs	10
---	----

LECTURE 3

Introduction to the Subjunctive Mood	19
--	----

LECTURE 4

The Irregular Verbs <i>Sum</i> and <i>Possum</i>	29
--	----

LECTURE 5

Introduction to Third-Declension Nouns	39
--	----

LECTURE 6

Third-Declension Neuter Nouns	51
-------------------------------------	----

LECTURE 7

First- and Second-Declension Adjectives	62
---	----

LECTURE 8

First- and Second-Declension Nouns	72
--	----

LECTURE 9

Introduction to the Passive Voice	83
---	----

LECTURE 10

Third <i>-io</i> and Fourth-Conjugation Verbs	92
---	----

Table of Contents

LECTURE 11

First- and Second-Conjugation Verbs.....	100
--	-----

LECTURE 12

Reading a Famous Latin Love Poem	108
--	-----

LECTURE 13

The Present Passive of All Conjugations.....	113
--	-----

LECTURE 14

Third-Declension Adjectives	120
-----------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 15

Third-Declension /-Stem Nouns	131
-------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 16

The Relative Pronoun.....	138
---------------------------	-----

LECTURE 17

The Imperfect and Future Tenses.....	144
--------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 18

Building Translation Skills.....	155
----------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 19

Using the Subjunctive Mood.....	161
---------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 20

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns.....	166
--	-----

LECTURE 21

The Perfect Tense Active System.....	174
--------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 22

Forming and Using Participles.....	184
------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 23

Using the Infinitive	195
----------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

LECTURE 24

Reading a Passage from Caesar	206
-------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 25

The Perfect Tense Passive System	211
--	-----

LECTURE 26

Deponent Verbs	221
----------------------	-----

LECTURE 27

Conditional Sentences	232
-----------------------------	-----

LECTURE 28

<i>Cum</i> Clauses and Stipulations	240
---	-----

LECTURE 29

Reading Excerpts from Roman Law	250
---------------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 30

Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns	256
---	-----

LECTURE 31

Fourth- and Fifth-Declension Nouns	266
--	-----

LECTURE 32

Gerunds and Gerundives	275
------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 33

Counting in Latin	285
-------------------------	-----

LECTURE 34

More on Irregular Verbs	294
-------------------------------	-----

LECTURE 35

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs	302
--	-----

LECTURE 36

Next Steps in Reading Latin	311
-----------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

SUPPLEMENTAL MATERIAL

Vocabulary (Verba).....	317
Answer Key	347
Appendix.....	382
Resources for Further Study	436

Latin 101: Learning a Classical Language

Scope:

This course provides a thorough introduction to the pronunciation, morphology, and syntax of classical Latin to enable you to read Latin prose and poetry with confidence, precision, and pleasure. No prior experience is required. We begin where the action is, with the Latin verb, and work our way systematically through the formation of nouns, adjectives, participles, infinitives, relatives, interrogatives, and more. All grammatical terms are explained, and all Latin is translated, both literally and idiomatically. Every lecture includes opportunities for participation through repetition, translation, and pop quizzes—the answers to which are always supplied so that you may check your work.

Throughout the lectures, we combine the brass tacks of mastering the grammatical building blocks of Latin with exercises in reading authentic Latin texts, and we do not shy away from challenge. Early and frequent exposure to authentic passages from the works of ancient authors is essential for gaining an understanding of Latin syntax. Learning the forms of individual words is not enough. Without a sound grasp of syntax, we cannot understand how grammatical links allow us, as readers, to re-create and comprehend authors' statements and thoughts. Building these skills requires exposure to a range of syntactical patterns. Practice is essential for nourishing confidence and fostering a love for the seductive beauties of Latin prose and poetry on the solid basis of morphology and syntax.

To learn to read Latin with understanding, we must also adjust our cultural expectations. Ancient Romans were not modern Americans. We thus read authentic texts that help us appreciate ancient Roman attitudes toward war, love, marriage, the gods, death, and the afterlife. How did Julius Caesar justify his invasion of Gaul? Why, according to the late imperial historian Eutropius, did Caesar's fellow senators stab him 33 times? How many kisses, according to Catullus, were enough if young lovers wanted to frustrate gossip old men? Why did Roman jurists justify a legal ban on the exchange of gifts between husbands and wives? What did ancient Roman law have

to say about divorce or debt? What can Jerome's Latin version of the Bible teach us about classical Latin? What can an inscription from a Roman tomb tell us about ancient Roman views on death and the afterlife? Such texts do more than allow us to observe how Latin works as a language. They have much to tell us about ancient expectations, the awareness of which likewise plays a crucial role in reading classical Latin with understanding.

Our approach is always comparative. Whether we study grammar or vocabulary, we use Latin to illuminate English. Almost every Latin word has been productive in shaping the words we use every day. We use these contributions both to acquire Latin vocabulary and to deepen our understanding of English. Our exploration of Latin grammar and syntax and ancient Roman thought sheds comparative and illuminating light, too. The more we study, read, learn, and understand Latin, the better sense we gain of who we are today and why. We inhabit a linguistic and cultural world shaped by the words and thought of ancient Rome. Latin reveals these many secrets and more, but only to those who make the journey in Latin. ■

Pronouncing Classical Latin

Lecture 1

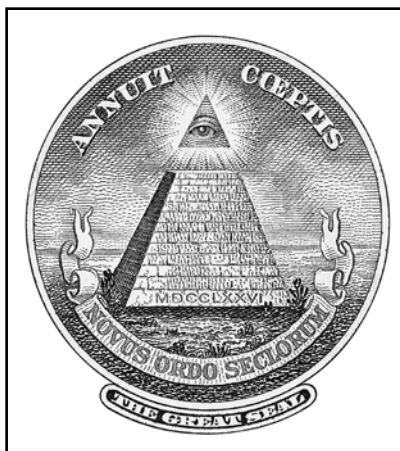
For thousands of years, the Mediterranean, northern Europe, and the world spoke Latin. Even after the fall of the Roman Empire, when the Venerable Bede wrote the history of England, he wrote in Latin, not English, which didn't exist yet—at least not in a form we can understand today. Even today, more than two-thirds of English vocabulary derives from Latin. The aim in this course is to introduce pronunciation, morphology, syntax, vocabulary, and authentic Latin texts in their cultural context. All this will enable you to appreciate the mysteries that lurk in the words we use every day and to unlock the even greater treasures hidden in the original Latin.

Latin all around us

- Latin is the foreign language that lies at the center of our intellectual traditions, and it is the foreign language we speak every day, whether we are aware of it or not. Indeed, original Latin remains all around us. A simple example can be found in university mottoes. For example, the motto of the University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill is *Lūx, libertās*, “Light, liberty.”
 - *Lūx* is now a technical word in English that refers to units of light in photometry, while *libertās* has emerged in English as “liberty.”
 - In English, “freedom” is a substantive or noun form that derives from the adjective “free.” *Libertās* is likewise a substantive that derives from the adjective *liber*, which in Latin, means “free.” Thus, a “liberal education” is one fit for a person who enjoys the privilege of personal freedom or liberty, and the “liberal arts” are the skills useful to a person who enjoys the status of a free person.
- Of course, we can also find Latin on a U.S. penny (*Ē plūribus ūnum*, “Out of the many, one”) and on the Great Seal of the United States on the back of a dollar bill. Over the eye floating above a

pyramid is the phrase *annuit coeptis*. Below the pyramid is *novus ordō seclōrum*.

- These phrases speak to the American Revolution as a turning point. *Annuit coeptis* refers to the eye of good fortune that has approved the undertakings of the revolutionaries.
- *Novus ordō seclōrum* refers to a “new order of the ages” because the revolutionaries believed that their revolution was the dawning of a new age.
- You may have heard some other Latin phrases here and there: *habeās corpus* (literally, “you should have your body”), *tabula rasa* (“blank slate”), *persona nōn grāta* (“a person not pleasing”), and *curriculum vītāe* (literally, “the racetrack of life”).
- Contrary to whatever reports you may have heard, Latin is hardly dead. It lives on in Italian, French, Spanish, Romanian, Rhaeto-romance, Catalan, Haitian Creole, and of course, English.



© iStockphoto/Thinkstock

The Great Seal of the United States, which appears on the back of the dollar bill, includes Latin phrases that the American revolutionaries believed related to their cause.

Pronunciation of the Latin alphabet

- The Romans adapted a West Greek alphabet, and the Greeks likely got their alphabet from the Phoenicians, a Semitic people inhabiting coastal areas that we now call Lebanon. We don’t, however, have to learn a new alphabet to learn Latin, because we already use the Roman alphabet ourselves. We have no new letters

to learn, but we will have to adjust some of the sounds for restored classical pronunciation.

- To make our work simple, we will discuss only letters that have sounds different from their pronunciation in English; these include vowels and the consonants C, G, I, and V.
- Latin vowels are pure; they each have just two sounds, as shown in the following table.

Vowel	Short Sound	Long Sound	Latin Examples	Notes
A	“uh” in <i>about</i> , <i>long</i>	“ah” in <i>father</i>	ăd, Rōmānus	Latin A is never pronounced as the English A in either <i>cat</i> or <i>Kate</i> .
E	“eh” in <i>get</i>	“ay” in <i>cake</i>	sĕd, sĕparō	
I	“ih” in <i>kin</i>	“ee” in <i>machine</i>	in, lĭber	
O	“ou” in <i>ought</i>	“o” in <i>go</i>	nox, nōn	
U	as in <i>book</i>	as in <i>food</i>	mūrūs	
Y	treat as Latin “i” (above)		Polybius	Used only in words deriving from Greek.

- Consonants in Latin have just one sound each, and for the most part, they represent the same sounds as they do in English. The sounds that differ are shown in the following table.

Consonant	Sound	Latin Examples
C	“k” in <i>car</i>	Caesar
G	“guh” in <i>game</i>	gemma
I	“yuh” in <i>yum</i>	iam
V	“wuh”	Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī

- Diphthongs are a combination of two vowels pronounced at the same time so as to produce a single sound. The following table shows the diphthongs found in Latin.

Diphthong	Sound	Latin Examples
ae	“i” in <i>ice</i>	Caesar, aeternus
oe	“oi” in <i>oil</i>	moenia, coeptis
au	“ow” in <i>howl</i>	Paullus, Paulus

Syllable stress

- The rules for stress in Latin are relatively simple. First, if a word has two syllables, always accent the first syllable: *CAE-sar*.
- If a word has three or more syllables, there are only two choices:
 - The accent goes on the second-to-last syllable if the vowel in the second-to-last syllable is long or counts as long. A short vowel counts as long if it is followed by two or more consonants.
 - If the vowel in the second-to-last syllable is short, then the accent falls on the third-to-last syllable.

Example	Explanation
Caesar	<i>Caesar</i> has two syllables, so the accent is on the first syllable.
libertas ("freedom")	The <i>e</i> in <i>libertas</i> is short, but it counts as long because it is followed by two or more consonants; thus, the stress is on the second-to-last syllable: <i>li-BER-tas</i> .
amāmus	The <i>a</i> in the second-to-last syllable is long, so that syllable gets the accent: <i>a-MA-mus</i> .
interficimus ("we kill")	For this type of verb (as we will learn later in the course), the <i>i</i> in the second-to-last syllable is short by nature; thus, the stress is on the third-to-last syllable: <i>interFicimus</i> .

Practice verses from Genesis (1:1–3)

In principiō creāvit Deus caelum et terram.

Terra autem erat inānis et vacua.

Et tenēbrae super faciem abyssi et spīritus Deī ferēbātur super aquās.

Dīxitque Deus fiat lūx et facta est lūx.

Memoranda ("Things to Remember")

Please learn the sounds made by Latin vowels, diphthongs, and consonants. Further information about Latin pronunciation may be found in Appendix §§ (= sections) 1–12.

Agenda (“Things to Do,” or Exercises).

i. Using the tables above, practice pronouncing the following words. Long vowels are marked with macrons; vowels that are not marked are short.

1. ad
2. pater
3. Caesar
4. sed
5. sēparō
6. gemma
7. in
8. cīvīlis
9. iam
10. bonus
11. nōn
12. mūrus
13. ventus
14. Vesta
15. aetās
16. moenia

17. aut

18. libertās

19. amāmus

20. spectāmus

21. interficimus

ii. Please listen again to the “restored classical” recitation of Genesis 1:1–3 in the lecture; then practice pronouncing the following words and phrases.

1. in principiō

2. caelum

3. inānis et vacua

4. tenēbrae

5. fiat lūx

6. et vīdit Deus lūcem

7. appellāvitque

8. vespere

Introduction to Third-Conjugation Verbs

Lecture 2

In our first lesson, we admired Latin's beauty, we remarked on its practical utility, and we practiced pronunciation. We will continue to explore all these things and more, but in this lesson, we will proceed directly to the heart of Latin, the Latin verb. Why is the verb so important? Because that's where Latin happens; that's where the action is. In this lecture, we'll look at the principal parts of Latin verbs and discuss the concepts of number, person, tense, voice, and mood.

Grammatical terms

- Verbs express actions, but we can also talk about Latin verbs in more precise terms. Verbs in Latin can be described in terms of their number, person, tense, voice, and mood.
- How does a verb exhibit number? Verbs may be either singular or plural. For example, in English, you might say, "One head of Cerberus barks," but "Cerberus's three heads bark." In these sentences, *barks* is singular and *bark* is plural, inasmuch as each agrees with a singular or plural subject.
- Singular and plural verbs are also limited by time. They can be present, past, or future. We call a verb's relation to time its tense. For example, "Fluffy barks right now," but "Cerberus barked 2,000 years ago." *Barks* is present tense and *barked* is past tense.



© Stockphoto/Thinkstock

Among Caesar's titles was *pontifex maximus* ("chief priest"), a title still used by the pope.

- In addition to number (singular or plural) and tense (past, present, future), verbs can also indicate person. Who does, did, or will do the verb? We indicate person in English with pronouns.
 - The first-person singular pronoun is *I*, and the first-person plural pronoun is *we*.
 - The second-person singular pronoun is *you*; the second-person plural pronoun is also *you* or, colloquially, *y'all*, *you guys*, and so on.
 - The third-person singular is *he*, *she*, or *it*, and the third-person plural is *they*.
- Latin verbs also have voice. They can be active or passive. A subject performs the action of an active verb. The subject of a passive verb has the action of that verb performed upon himself, herself, or itself. Consider the difference between “I pay” and “I am paid.”
- Latin verbs also have three moods.
 - Verbs that state facts, that inform, or that indicate are in the indicative mood.
 - Verbs that command (“Wake up!”) are in the imperative mood.
 - Verbs that express wishes, uncertainty, fears, and other emotions or attitudes are in the subjunctive mood.
- Verbal forms that satisfy all five characteristics of a Latin verb—number, person, tense, voice, and mood—are called finite. Another verbal form that is not subject to the limits of person, number, or mood, although it does show tense and voice, is the infinitive (meaning “not finite” or “not as defined”). In English, most infinitives are marked with *to*, as in *to bark*, *to command*, *to do*.

Latin as an inflected language

- Latin is a highly inflected language. Think of it as flexible or bendable. We can bend the shape of words in Latin to indicate how

they relate to other words in the sentence. We have some inflection in English but not much.

- We can make singular nouns plural by adding an *s*; for example: *chariot* (singular) and *chariots* (plural).
- We add a different kind of *s* to show possession; for example: “the chariot of the sun god” and “the sun god’s chariot.” The magic of inflection eliminates the preposition *of*.
- The addition of *ed* can change time; for example: “The dog barks every morning” and “The dog barked a lot yesterday.”
- Latin makes these kinds of changes much more frequently than English. A key to learning Latin is to pay attention to the ends of words. To convey meaning, English uses predictable word order; Latin uses flexible word endings.

Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

English pronoun equivalents for Latin personal endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m = I	-mus = we
2	-s = you (sing.)	-tis = you (pl.)
3	-t = he/she/it	-nt = they

Present active indicative conjugation of *agō*

agō, agere, ēgī, actum: do, drive

	Singular	Plural
1	agō	agimus
2	agis	agitis
3	agit	agunt

Translation of present active indicative, *agō*

	Singular	Plural
1	agō = I do	agimus = we do
2	agis = you (sing.) do	agitis = you (pl.) do
3	agit = he/she/it does	agunt = they do

Note: *Agō* is the first-person singular form for the present tense, active voice, indicative mood. *Agō* may be translated three ways: “I do,” “I am doing,” “I do do.”

Imperative of *agō*

	Singular	Plural
1	***	***
2	age = do!	agite = do!
3	***	***

Sentence practice

- The phrase *bellum agere* literally means “war to do.” Latin tends to put the action after the object, but we can reverse the order: “to do war.” In English, we would say, “to wage war.”
- Let’s look at the sentence *Bellum agunt*. The ending *-nt* tells us that “they” are performing the action of the verb. *Agunt* means “they

do”; thus, an idiomatic translation of the sentence reads: “They wage war.”

- The sentence *Caesar bellum agit* means, of course, “Caesar wages war.” Notice that the verb ends in *-t*, which is the third-person singular ending.
- Let’s try this sentence: *Gaius Iulius Caesar, imperātor et pontifex maximus, bellum in Galliā agit*. A word-for-word translation reads: “Gaius Julius Caesar, general (*imperātor*) and chief priest (*pontifex maximus*), war (*bellum*) in Gaul (*in Galliā*) he wages (*agit*).” An idiomatic translation reads: “Gaius Julius Caesar, general and chief priest, wages war in Gaul.”
- English word order prefers to place the verb after the subject. Latin can put the verb almost anywhere. How do we know, then, who’s “doing” the verb? The ending on the verb tells us the person and number of the subject.
- To give Caesar a command, we need to use the imperative mood. “Wage war, Caesar!” would be *Age bellum, Caesar!* To command Caesar’s soldiers (more than one person), we would say, *Agite bellum, milītēs!*

Verba (Vocabulary)

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: do, drive, lead

bellum: war (*agere bellum* = to wage war)

bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitum: drink

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum: cut, cut down, slay

Caesar: Gaius Julius Caesar, politician, author, and conquerer of Gaul, famously assassinated on March 15 (the Ides), 44 B.C.E.

cibum: food

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum: say, speak, tell

discipulī (m.), discipulae (f.): students

edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum: eat

est: is

et: and

flōrēs: flowers

Gallia: Gaul (corresponding geographically to modern France)

mīles/mīlitēs: soldier/soldiers

mulier/mulierēs: woman/women

-ne (enclitic particle): attaches to the first word in the sentence to indicate that what follows is a question

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place, put aside, put away

pontifex/pontificēs: priest/priests (*pontifex maximus* = chief priest)

salvē (sing.), salvēte (pl.): greetings

valē (sing.), valēte (pl.): be well, farewell

vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditum: sell

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum: conquer

vīnum: wine

Memoranda

Please learn the personal active endings of the Latin verb, the sign of the present active infinitive, and the imperative endings.

Agenda

- i. In the verb chart below, provide the personal endings of the Latin verb in the present tense active voice.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- ii. In the verb chart below, conjugate the verb *agō* in the present active indicative.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- iii. Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present active indicative.

1. pōnō
2. bibō
3. vincō

iv. Please translate the following into Latin. (Each translation will be a single word.)

- 1.** to say
- 2.** Put away! (singular)
- 3.** Put away! (plural)
- 4.** to drink
- 5.** Eat! (plural)
- 6.** We sell.
- 7.** to drive
- 8.** She is driving.
- 9.** Drive! (singular)
- 10.** to conquer
- 11.** They are conquering.
- 12.** They drink.
- 13.** We are cutting.
- 14.** Are you (singular) cutting?
- 15.** You (plural) eat.

iv. Please translate the following into English.

1. Caesar dīcit.
2. Dīcimus.
3. Dīcite, muliērēs!
4. Caesar bellum agit.
5. Caesar flōrēs caedit.
6. Mīlitēs flōrēs caedunt.
7. Pōnite flōrēs, mīlitēs, et vincite!
8. Mīlitēs cibum edunt.
9. Pontificēs vīnum bibunt.
10. Servum vendō.
11. Vince, Caesar!
12. Agite bellum, mīlitēs!
13. Cibum edimus et vīnum bibimus.
14. Edisne cibum?
15. Bibitisne vīnum?

Introduction to the Subjunctive Mood

Lecture 3

In Lecture 2, we learned nine forms, six indicative endings, two imperative endings, and an infinitive ending. In this lecture, we will explore the power of a single vowel: *ā*. In the last lecture, we also learned the personal endings of the Latin verb, and we put these endings on *agō*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *actum*, which means “to do.” In this lecture, we will use the verb *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*, which means “to put or to place.”

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Imperative of *pōnō*

pōnō, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	***	***
2	pōne = put!	pōnite = put!
3	***	***

Present active indicative conjugation of *pōnō**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place*

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnō	pōnimus
2	pōnis	pōnitis
3	pōnit	pōnunt

Present active subjunctive conjugation of *pōnō**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place*

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnam	pōnāmus
2	pōnās	pōnātis
3	pōnat	pōnant

Quiz

In the following sentences, change the English form of the word “put” or “place” to its Latin equivalent.

1. *Let Caesar put* his legions in Gaul!
2. *Let Pompey and Crassus put* Cicero to work for the triumvirate!
3. *Let us put* that knife in Caesar!

These examples represent one use of the subjunctive. We can use the subjunctive to exhort someone to do something. This is called the hortatory subjunctive because we are exhorting and encouraging, not pointing out facts, which is what the indicative mood is used for.

Answers: 1. *pōnat*, 2. *pōnant*, 3. *pōnāmus*.

Review of mood

- The indicative mood of the verb spells out facts. The word *indicative* derives from *index*, which in Latin meant “informer.” Think of using your index finger to point out a fact: “Which of your neighbors moved his boundary stone onto your property?” “He did.”
- The imperative mood is bossy; it’s used to give direct orders: “Put the dinner on the table now, Julius!”
- The subjunctive mood is more subtle and has many uses. As we said, it can be used to exhort. It can also be used with *ut* to express purpose or result:
 - so that he may put: *ut pōnat*
 - with the result that he may put: *ut pōnat*
- The subjunctive mood can be used with *nē* to express negative purpose or with *ut nōn* to express negative result:
 - so that he may not put: *nē pōnat*
 - with the result that he may not put: *ut nōn pōnat*
- Why is the Latin so much terser than the English? Because we’re using convoluted English to capture the sense of the Latin subjunctive more precisely. In English, we can express purpose with an infinitive: “Casca attends the Senate to put his dagger in Caesar.” Good Latin would use the subjunctive, which we can mimic: “Casca attends the Senate so that he may put his dagger in Caesar.”
- Other uses of the subjunctive include expressing doubt about something someone else has said, when reporting an opinion, when reporting an indirect question, when expressing a general characteristic, and more.

Present active indicative conjugation of *vīvō**vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum*: live

	Singular	Plural
1	vīvō	vīvimus
2	vīvis	vīvitis
3	vīvit	vīvunt

Present active subjunctive conjugation of *vīvō**vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum*: live

	Singular	Plural
1	vīvam	vīvāmus
2	vīvās	vīvātis
3	vīvat	vīvant

Present active subjunctive conjugation of *bibō**bibō, bibere, bibī*: drink

	Singular	Plural
1	bibam	bibāmus
2	bibās	bibātis
3	bibat	bibant

Note: Depending on the circumstances, “you should drink,” “you may drink,” “so that you may drink,” and “you drink” may be represented by *bibās*. How can this be? In Latin, the subjunctive represents the attitude of the speaker to the action. We represent attitude in English differently, hence, the lack of one-to-one correspondence.

Present subjunctive conjugation of *fiō*

fiō, fierī, factus sum: be made, become, happen

	Singular	Plural
1	fiām	fiāmus
2	fiās	fiātis
3	fiat	fiant

Present active indicative conjugation of *dēsinō*

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīt: cease, desist, stop

	Singular	Plural
1	dēsinō	dēsinimus
2	dēsinis	dēsinitis
3	dēsinit	dēsinunt

Present active subjunctive conjugation of *dēsinō*

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīt: cease, desist, stop

	Singular	Plural
1	dēsinam	dēsināmus
2	dēsinās	dēsinātis
3	dēsinat	dēsinant

Catullus and Lesbia

- Catullus was a Roman poet in the 1st century B.C.E., whose poems are some of the most famous to survive from the ancient world. One of his poems is a sort of pep talk to himself. It begins with the line: *Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre!*

- The main action here is in the verb, of course, which is *dēsinās*. How do we translate it? If the indicative *dēsinis* means “you cease, desist, or stop,” then the subjunctive form means “you should stop,” “you should cease.” The infinitive gives us more verbal information. It completes the meaning of the verb *cease*, that is, “you should cease to be a fool.”
- Thus, the first line translates: “Unhappy Catullus, cease to be a fool!”

Advice to Himself

by Catullus

Catullus, you wretch, cease to be a fool!

And what you see has been lost, reckon it lost!

Once upon a time, bright white suns shone for you,
when, again and again, you went wherever she would lead,
a girl loved more by us than any other will ever be loved.

Those were the days we had so many laughs, so much pleasure,
which you, Catullus, desired nor did she, your mistress, not desire these things.

Bright white suns— truly they shone for you!

But now she no longer desires: so you, too, raving madman, do not desire!

And do not follow when she flees, and do not live a wretch,
but, with a mind made firm, endure! Be strong!

Good-bye, girlfriend, Catullus is strong now,
and he will not ask for you when you are not willing.

But you will suffer, when you will be asked for—by no one.

Woe is you, vile mistress! What life remains for you?

Who will now approach you? To whom will you seem beautiful?

Whom will you now love? Whose will you be said to be?

Whom will you kiss? Whose little lips will you nibble?

But you, Catullus, you’ve come to a decision—be strong!

Sentence practice

- The verb “learn,” *disco, discere, didicī*, is another verb with three principal parts. Together with our other verbs and a few nouns, we can practice reading some sentences:

1. *Linguam Latīnam discō*. I learn the Latin language.
2. *Linguam Latīnam discimus*. We learn the Latin language.
3. *Linguam Latīnam discāmus*. Let us learn the Latin language.
4. *Bibāmus, ut vīvāmus!* Let us drink, so that we may live!
5. *Vīvimus, ut bibāmus*. We live, so that we may drink.
6. *Lesbia bibit, nē Catullus dēsinat ineptīre*. Lesbia drinks, lest Catullus cease to be a fool. (Lesbia drinks so that Catullus will not cease to be a fool.)
7. *Bibite, Catulle et Lesbia, ut vīvātis!* Drink, Catullus and Lesbia, so that you may live!
8. *Bibite*. Drink!
9. *Dēsinātis ineptīre, nē Lesbia bibat*. Y’all should cease to be foolish, lest Lesbia drink.
10. *Linguam Latīnam discunt, ut in Rōmā antīquā vīvant*. They learn the Latin language so that they may live in ancient Rome.

Verba

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīī: cease, stop

discō, discere, didicī: learn

fīō, fierī, factus sum: to be made, to happen, to become, to come into existence

linguam Latīnam (direct object form): Latin language (*linguae Latīnae* = of the Latin language)

lūx: light

nē: used with subjunctive verbs to express negative purpose (so that ... not)

-que: attaches to a word to indicate “and” (*discipulī discipulaeque* = male students **and** female students)

ut: used with subjunctive verbs to express purpose (so that ...)

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum: live

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts, the present-tense active indicative, the present-tense active subjunctive, the present-tense active imperatives (or command forms), and the present active infinitive of *pōnō*. All forms of *pōnō* may be found in Appendix §55, but these more complete charts will become more useful later in the course.

Agenda

- i. In the verb chart below, provide the personal endings of the Latin verb in the present tense active voice.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- ii. In the verb chart below, conjugate the verb *vīvō* in the present active indicative.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- iii. In the verb chart below, conjugate the verb *vīvō* in the present active subjunctive.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- iv. Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present tense of the mood indicated.

1. *pōnō* (subjunctive)
2. *dēsinō* (indicative)
3. *discō* (indicative)
4. *bibō* (subjunctive)

- v. Please translate the following into English.

1. *bibimus*
2. *bibāmus*
3. *discunt*

4. discant
5. dēsinitis
6. dēsīnātis

vi. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. The women learn.
2. The women may learn
3. Let us learn the Latin language.
4. Stop! (addressing one person)
5. Stop! (addressing more than one person)
6. The soldiers are eating so that they may live.
7. Let the soldier eat and drink.
8. Let us drink so that we may live.
9. Caesar is conquering.
10. Caesar may conquer.
11. Let there be light! (Let light come into existence!)
12. Greetings, (male and female) students!

The Irregular Verbs *Sum* and *Possum*

Lecture 4

In the last lecture, we studied the subjunctive power of *ā*. We turned *pōnō*, “I place” or “I put away,” into *pōnam*, “let me put away.” We will begin this lecture by reviewing the personal active endings of the Latin verb. These endings work not just for regular verbs but for irregular verbs, as well, and in this lesson, we will learn two of them: *sum* (“I am”) and *possum* (“I am able”).

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Present indicative of *sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

	Singular	Plural
1	sum	sumus
2	es	estis
3	est	sunt

- The verb “to be” is irregular. It has four parts: *sum* (“I am”), *esse* (“to be”), *fuī* (“I have been”), *futūrum* (“going to be”).
- In the present indicative, note that despite the irregularities of the base (*su-*, *e-*, *es-*, *su-*, *es-*, *su-*), the endings are regular.

Translation of present indicative of *sum*

	Singular	Plural
1	sum = I am	sumus = we are
2	es = you (sing.) are	estis = you (pl.) are
3	est = he/she/it is	sunt = they are

Quiz

The following English sentences include a form of the verb “to be” in the present tense. Supply the corresponding Latin equivalent.

1. Latin *is* a language.
2. *Is* Pompey in love?
3. There *is* a lion in that cage.
4. *We are* students of the Latin language.
5. *Are you*, Julius, a military genius?
6. *You*, Catiline and Cethegus, *are* conspirators!
7. *I am* not a prophet.
8. *There are* many soldiers outside my door.

Answers: 1. *est*, 2. *est*, 3. *est*, 4. *sumus*, 5. *es*, 6. *estis*, 7. *sum*, 8. *sunt*.

Present subjunctive of *sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

	Singular	Plural
1	sim	sīmus
2	sīs	sītis
3	sit	sint

“To be able”

- In ancient Latin, *pot-* plus “being” yields ability, that is, the forms of the irregular verb “to be able.” Note that this verb is irregular in English, as well. Compare “I *can* see you” with “I *am able* to see you.” *Can* and *to be able to* are not even close, yet they are considered parts of the same irregular English verb. Latin is much more regular. All that’s needed is *pot-* or *pos-*.
- Latin *pot-* is related to the same *pot-* we find in the English word *potent*, a word that means “powerful, able.” Thus, combining *est* (“is”) with *pot-* yields *potest*, which means, quite literally “able is” or, in normal English word order “is able.”
- The only other thing we need to know is that *pot-* changes to *pos-* if the initial letter of the form of “to be” is an *s*.

Present indicative of *possum*

possum, posse, potuī: be able, can

1	possum	possumus
2	potes	potestis
3	potest	possunt

Present subjunctive of *possum**possum, posse, potuī*: be able, can

	Singular	Plural
1	possim	possīmus
2	possīs	possītis
3	possit	possint

Imperatives of *sum/possum*

	Singular	Plural
1	***	***
2	es (“be!”) / potes (“be able!”)	este (“be!”) / poteste (“be able!”)
3	***	***

Infinitives of *sum/possum*

Sum: esse (“to be”)

Possum: posse (“to be able”)

Complementary infinitives

- *Possum* is a verb that allows its meaning to be “completed” by other verbs. Simply stating, “I can” or “I am able,” for example, does not always tell us enough.
- If we parse “I am able to read,” what verb in what part of speech completes the meaning of the main verb “I am able”? The infinitive “to read” completes the meaning of “I am able” by telling what I am able to do.

- Inasmuch as “to read” is an infinitive that “completes” the meaning of the verb, it’s called a complementary infinitive. If the verb *legō*, *legere*, *lēgī*, *lēctum* means “read,” and *potest* means “she is able,” what does *potest legere* mean? “She is able to read” or “she can read.”

Sentence practice

1. *Possumus bibere*. We are able to drink. *Or*: We can drink
2. *Possunt ineptire*. They are able to be foolish. *Or*: They can be foolish.
3. *Potest linguam Latīnam legere*. She is able to read the Latin language. *Or*: She can read the Latin language.
4. *Bibimus, ut possimus bene* (well) *vivere*. We drink so that we can live well. *Or*, more literally: We drink so that we may be able to live well.
5. *Vita brevis*. Life is short.
6. *Ars longa*. Art is long.
7. *Vita est brevis, sed ars est longa*. Life is short, but art is long. (*Sed* is a conjunction that contrasts the thought of what follows it with the idea of the main clause. In Latin, *sed* can be dropped altogether. This is a rhetorical trick that makes listeners or readers combine the clauses on their own without the help of a conjunction. In rhetoric, the figure of speech is called *asyndeton*, which means “no connection” in ancient Greek.)
8. *Sit vita longa!* May life be long!
9. *Ars brevis esse potest*. Art can be short.
10. *Linguam Latīnam legere possumus*. We can read the Latin language.
11. *Potestis ineptire*. Y’all can be foolish.

12. *Sumus*. We are.
13. *Sīmus*. Let us be.
14. *Est*. It is.
15. *Sit*. Let it be.
16. *Sit, sit*. Let it be, let it be.
17. *Esse an nōn* (or not) *esse*? To be or not to be?
18. *Esse est posse*. To be is to be able.
19. *Pōne metum; valeō*. Put away your fear, (for) I am well. (Ovid)
20. *Pōnāmus metum*. Let us put away our fear. *Or*: Let's not be afraid.
21. *Pōnāmus nimiōs gemitūs!* Let us put away excessive sorrow! (Juvenal)
22. *Caesar populum Rōmānum dēcipit*. Caesar deceives the Roman people.
23. *Caesar populum Rōmānum dēcipere potest*. Caesar is able to deceive the Roman people.
24. *Fiat lūx!* Let there be light! *Or*, more literally: Let light be made!
25. *Sī lūx est, possumus bibere*. If there is light, we are able to drink.
26. *Sī lūx fiat, possīmus bibere*. If light should be made, we would be able to drink. *Or*, in less formal English: If you'd turn on the light, we'd be able to drink.
27. *Sī lūx fiat, possīmus bibere?* If it should become light, would we be able to drink?

Parsing a Latin sentence

- Let's parse the following Latin sentence: *Bibimus, ut possimus bene vivere*, which means, "We drink so that we can live well."
- The verb *bibimus* ("we drink") is in the first-person plural present tense. The mood is indicative, because the sentence is stating a fact.
- The word *ut* is a conjunction that joins one phrase to another, allowing us to combine two clauses into one more complex thought. Note, too, that *ut* is a subordinating conjunction. The thought expressed in the clause or phrase introduced by *ut* is combined with the thought of the main clause (*bibimus*) to explain why we're making the statement *bibimus* ("we drink"). In particular, *ut* introduces purpose or result. In this sentence, we find purpose, but barring further context, we could well have chosen result: "We drink with the result that we are able to live well."
- What is the mood of *possimus* ("we can" or "are able" or "may be able to")? It is a third-person plural present-tense subjunctive verb in a clause of result or purpose.
- The new word *bene* is an adverb that modifies the infinitive *vivere* ("to live"). Because it completes the meaning of *possimus*, *vivere* is a complementary infinitive.

Verba

bene (adverb): well

dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptum: deceive

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum: read

nōn: not

possum, posse, potuī: be able

sed (conjunction): but

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts, present-tense indicative and subjunctive, the present imperatives, and the infinitive of *sum* (“to be”). Learn the principal parts of *possum* (“to be able”) and familiarize yourself with how to apply the prefix *pot-* (or *pos-*) to the forms of *sum* in order to create *possum*. All forms of *sum* may be found in App. §52, but please study only the present-tense forms. Representative forms of *possum* appear in App. §66.

Agenda

- i. In the verb chart below, conjugate the verb *legō* in the present active indicative.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- ii. In the verb chart below, conjugate the verb *sum* in the present indicative.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

- iii. Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present tense of the mood indicated.

1. *possum* (indicative)

2. sum (subjunctive)
3. legō (subjunctive)
4. possum (subjunctive)

iv. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. She is able.
2. She may be able.
3. They are.
4. Let them be.
5. We are able to read.
6. We may be able to read.
7. The women can learn.
8. Can the soldiers conquer?
9. Are the male and female students able to learn the Latin language?
10. You are soldiers, but we are not soldiers.
11. Are you a soldier?
12. Let it be.

v. Please translate the following into English.

1. Caesar potest populum Rōmānum dēcipere.
2. Cūrāte, ut valeātis!

3. Bibimus et edimus, ut possīmus bene vīvere.
4. Si lūx est, possumus bibere.
5. Mīlitēs possunt vincere sed nōn vīcunt.
6. Vīta brevis est.
7. Ars longa esse potest.
8. Esse est posse.
9. Bene legere potestis, discipulae.
10. Mīlitēs nōn sunt.

Introduction to Third-Declension Nouns

Lecture 5

In the last three lectures, we've concentrated on verbs because the verb is where the action is in a sentence. The personal active endings of the Latin verb (-ō or -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt) tell us who is performing the action of the verb, and if we change the vowel in front of the ending from *i* or *u* to *ā*, we change the mood from indicative to subjunctive. For the irregular verbs *sum* and *possum*, we saw that the subjunctive vowel was *i*. Verbs are central, but there is more to the world than action, and there are more parts of speech than verbs, infinitives, and conjunctions. In this lecture, we will dive into nouns.

Defining “declension”

- As we all know, a noun is a person, place, or thing. Nouns can be the subjects or objects of verbs. They can be used with prepositions in adverbial phrases. They can express the means by which an action is accomplished, and they can show possession. Our linguistic world becomes much richer with the addition of nouns, and Latin has an effective system to organize their syntax, that is, their grammatical relations with other words in sentences, phrases, and clauses.
- As you recall, Latin is a highly inflected language. It changes the endings of words to indicate how those words relate to other words in a sentence. When we put endings on verbs, we call the process “conjugation.” When we put endings on nouns and adjectives, we call it “declension.”
- Third-declension nouns are the largest class of nouns in the Latin language. The 10 endings for these nouns (5 singular and 5 plural) are shown in the following table.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-ēs
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-e	-ibus

Declension of *mīles* (third-declension noun)

mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles	mīlitēs
Genitive	mīlitis	mīlitum
Dative	mīlitī	mīlitibus
Accusative	mīlitem	mīlitēs
Ablative	mīlite	mīlitibus

Parsing *mīles*

- The first form here is *mīles*, which we call nominative. The word *nominative* derives from the Latin word *nōmen*, meaning “name.” This is the form (or case) in which we “name” or identify a word. It is also the form a word takes when it serves as the subject or doer of a verb. In order for a Latin speaker to know that a noun was meant to serve as the subject of a verb, the noun had to be in the nominative case.

- *Miles potest dicere.* The soldier is able to speak.
- We can parse or construe *soldier* as the subject of *potest* because *mīles* is nominative.
- The second form of the noun is called genitive, and the genitive is the most crucial form of the word for applying the other endings correctly.
 - In the genitive, *mīles* becomes *mīlitis*, or “of the soldier.” *Mīles* has no ending, and *mīlitis* has the ending *-is*, which we translate as the equivalent of our preposition “of.” *Legiō* means “legion”; thus, *legiō mīlitis* can be translated as “the legion of the soldier” or “the soldier’s legion.” The *-is* ending on *soldier* tells us that the legion belongs to the soldier. In other words, the genitive ending or case shows possession.
 - But the genitive also shows us something essential about the noun. It is in the genitive case where we can determine what the stem or base of the noun might be, and we need that base before we can apply the rest of the endings. If we cut off the genitive ending from *mīlitis* (*-is*), we are left with *mīlit-*. This stem is the form that comes into English in such words as *military*.
 - If we settle for the nominative, we’ll get the wrong stem, and every other form will be incorrect. All nouns, when they are listed in a dictionary, are listed first in the nominative and then in the genitive singular. We need both, and we need to be able to identify the genitive ending so that we can remove it to obtain the noun’s base or stem.
- The next case is the *dative*. Here, think “donation.” This case is used for giving a direct object to an indirect object. In the sentence “Caesar gives the money *to the soldier*,” Caesar is the subject, and the money is the direct object. The soldier is the indirect object because, although Caesar does not perform the action of giving directly upon him—Caesar does not “give the soldier”—the soldier

is indirectly involved in the action. After Caesar gives, the soldier has money, which he did not have before Caesar gave. We call the soldier's relation to the verb *give* “indirect.”

- In Latin, to signal that a noun serves as an indirect object, we put it in the dative case; that is, we put the dative ending on the base of the noun.
- The ending for the dative singular is *-ī*, which is pronounced “ee.” Again, first we find the base, which is *mīlit*, then we add *ī* to that base: *mīlitī*.
- The next case is the accusative, the case of the direct object. In the sentence “Caesar hates the soldier,” the soldier is the direct object because Caesar directs his hatred—he performs the action of hating—on the soldier directly. In Latin, the sentence reads: *Caesar mīlitem ōdit*.
 - We reverse-engineer *mīlitem* and determine the ending for the direct object, the accusative case.
 - The base of the noun is *mīlit*, and the accusative ending is *-em*.
- The word *ablative* literally means “carried away”; it describes metaphorically the form “carried away” farthest from the original nominative.
 - In our example, we add the letter *e* (pronounced as *ě*) to the stem, *mīlit*, to get *mīlite*, meaning “by, with, or from the soldier.”
 - In the sentence *Caesar cum mīlite bibit* (“Caesar drinks with the soldier”), the soldier is ablative. The preposition *cum* (“with”) is associated with or governs the ablative case. The ablative is used to indicate who accompanies Caesar and is, thus, called the “ablative of accompaniment” to distinguish it from other uses of the ablative.

Declension of *lūx* (third-declension noun)

lūx, lūcis, f.: light

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>lūx</i>	<i>lūcēs</i>
Genitive	<i>lūcis</i>	<i>lūcum</i>
Dative	<i>lūcī</i>	<i>lūcibus</i>
Accusative	<i>lūcem</i>	<i>lūcēs</i>
Ablative	<i>lūce</i>	<i>lūcibus</i>

Parsing *lūx*

- *Lūx* is a feminine word meaning “light.” The genitive of *lūx* is *lūcis*. If we remove the genitive ending, which is the same *-is* we saw earlier, the base of the word *lūx* is *luc-*.
- A quick declension and translation of *lūx* are shown in the following table.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	<i>lūx</i> : the light “verbs”	<i>lūcēs</i> : the lights “verb”
Genitive	<i>lūcis</i> : of the light	<i>lūcum</i> : of the lights
Dative	<i>lūcī</i> : to or for the light	<i>lūcibus</i> : to or for the lights
Accusative	<i>lūcem</i> : “verb” the light	<i>lūcēs</i> : “verb” the lights
Ablative	<i>lūce</i> : by, with, or from the light	<i>lūcibus</i> : by with, or from the lights

- How can we tell the nominative *lūcēs* from the accusative *lūcēs* and the dative *lūcibus* from the ablative *lūcibus*, given that they look and sound exactly the same? The answer is context.

- Consider this sentence: *Lūcēs mēnsem faciunt*. The “lights,” *lūcēs*, (i.e., “day-lights” or “days”) “make,” *faciunt*, “a month,” *mēnsem*.
- How do we know that the days make a month, and it is not the month that makes the days? There are several clues.
- Parsing the sentence, we find:
 - *Lūcēs*: nominative or accusative plural, subject or direct object
 - *mēnsem*: accusative singular, direct object
 - *faciunt*: third-person plural present-tense indicative verb
- *Faciunt* requires a plural subject. The only available candidate is the word *lūcēs*. *Mēnsem* is accusative, which means that it must be the direct object, thus leaving *lūcēs* available to serve as the subject. The easiest path to a meaningful sentence is to read *lūcēs* as the nominative subject: “The days make a month”; *Lūcēs mēnsem faciunt*.

Declension of *vērītās* (third-declension noun)

vērītās, vērītātis, f.: truth

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	vērītās	vērītātēs
Genitive	vērītātis	vērītātum
Dative	vērītātī	vērītātibus
Accusative	vērītātem	vērītātēs
Ablative	vērītāte	vērītātibus

- *Vēritās*, Harvard's motto, means "truth." The final codification of Roman law under the emperor Justinian is known as the *Digest of Roman Law*, and it has the following phrase, simplified here for the purpose of illustration: *Vēritās in lūcem ēmergit*; "The truth emerges into light," or "The truth comes to light."



© iStockphoto/Thinkstock

Pontius Pilate reportedly asked a then obscure but now famous defendant: *Quid est vēritās*? "What is truth?"

- Here, *vēritās* is the nominative subject of the verb *ēmergit*, and *lūcem* is accusative after the preposition *in* for reasons we will not discuss in detail, except to note that prepositions can be used with either the accusative or the ablative, and there are reasons for using one or the other.
- In this sentence, we find *light* as a bona fide direct object: *Vēritās lūcem nōn refugit*. "Truth does not flee the light."

Declension of *Caesar* (third-declension noun)

Caesar, Caesaris, m: Caesar

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	Caesar	Caesarēs
Genitive	Caesaris	Caesarum
Dative	Caesarī	Caesaribus
Accusative	Caesarem	Caesarēs
Ablative	Caesare	Caesaribus

Note the shift in accent from *Cae* to *sar* in the dative and ablative plural. The accent in Latin cannot stand farther back from the end than the antepenult (third-from-last) syllable.

Quiz

- In this drill, you will hear a series of sentences in English in which the name *Caesar* appears. Your task is to assess how *Caesar* fits into the syntax of the English sentence and then to translate *Caesar* into the corresponding Latin form.
- For example, in the sentence “Brutus stabs Caesar,” *Caesar* is the direct object of the verb *stab*, and in Latin, direct objects must appear in the accusative case. Thus, the corresponding Latin form would be *Caesarem*. Note that the examples in the following sentences refer to a variety of Caesars, not just Julius.

1. Caesar ruled Rome.
2. Suetonius wrote graphic biographies of the Caesars.
3. The law that made adultery a crime against the state was proposed by Caesar.
4. Provincial officials built many temples for the deified Caesars.
5. The Jews and, later, the Christians, refused to worship the allegedly divine Caesars.
6. Render unto Caesar ...
7. ... the things that are Caesar's.

Answers: 1. subject of the verb *ruled*, hence, nominative: *Caesar*; 2. *of*, hence, genitive: *Caesarum*; 3. *by*, hence, ablative: *Caesare*; 4. indirect object of the verb *built*, hence, dative: *Caesaribus*; 5. direct object of the verb *worship*, hence, accusative: *Caesarēs*; 6. *to* or *for* and, apparently, *unto*, thus,

indirect object, hence, dative: *Caesarī*; 7. the things “belong to Caesar,” thus, possession, hence, genitive: *Caesaris*.

Verba

an (conjunction): or

lūx, lūcis, f.: light

magis (adverb): more

mēns, mentis, f.: mind

mēnsis, mēnsis, m.: month

mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum: go forward, advance, prosper

quid: what?

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum: give back, render, restore

vērītās, vērītātis, f.: truth

virtūs, virtūtis, f.: strength, courage

Memoranda

Please learn the third-declension endings for masculine and feminine nouns, as well as the declension of *mīles*, *mīlitis*, m., “soldier” (which may be found also in App. §17, A).

Agenda

i. Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present tense of the mood indicated.

1. reddō (indicative)
2. prōcēdō (subjunctive)
3. sum (indicative)
4. possum (subjunctive)

ii. In the noun chart below, provide the endings for third-declension nouns.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Genitive		
Dative		
Accusative		
Ablative		

iii. In the noun chart below, decline the third-declension noun *mīles*, *mīlitis*.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Genitive		
Dative		
Accusative		
Ablative		

iv. In the noun chart below, decline the third-declension noun *virtūs, virtūtis*.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Genitive		
Dative		
Accusative		
Ablative		

v. Create your own noun chart and decline the following third-declension nouns.

1. lūx, lūcis

2. vēritās, vēritātis

vi. Give the case and number of the following noun forms and then translate each into English. Some forms have more than one possible case.

1. vēritātis

2. lūce

3. mīlitēs

4. mīlitum

5. Caesaris

6. mēnsibus

7. vēritātī

8. Caesarī

9. lūcum

10. virtūte

vii. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. Caesar's soldiers are conquering.
2. Caesar speaks the truth to the soldier.
3. Let us advance!
4. Let truth be the light of the mind.
5. The soldiers' strength is great (*magna*).
6. The woman is learning by the strength of (her) mind.
7. Render (plural) praise (*laudem*) to Caesar!
8. Let us render praise to the truth!
9. The soldiers cannot deceive Caesar.
10. We are not able to learn the truth.

Third-Declension Neuter Nouns

Lecture 6

So far, we have learned a crucial key to Latin verbs, as well as fundamental lessons about Latin nouns. In this lecture, we will review the personal active endings; the verbs *pōnō*, *sum*, and *possum*; and the masculine/feminine endings for third-declension nouns. We'll then turn to neuter nouns and practice parsing some sentences from Cicero and Caesar.

Review: Personal active endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Review: Present active indicative conjugation of *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnō	pōnimus
2	pōnis	pōnitis
3	pōnit	pōnunt

Review: Present active subjunctive conjugation of *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnam	pōnāmus
2	pōnās	pōnātis
3	pōnat	pōnant

Review: Imperative of *pōnō*

	Singular	Plural
1	***	***
2	pōne = put!	pōnite = put!
3	***	***

Review: Infinitive of *pōnō*

pōnere

Quiz

The following sentences in English include a form of the verb “to put, place, or put away.” Turn just the form of “put” or “place” into its Latin equivalent using the forms of *pōnere*.

1. *She puts away* her dolls.
2. She’s already 13. *Let her put away* her dolls and get married.
3. We were able *to put* the scroll in the library.
4. *We put*.
5. *We may put*.
6. *Let us put away*.

Answers: 1. *pōnit*, 2. *pōnat*, 3. *pōnere*, 4. *pōnimus*, 5. *pōnāmus*, 6. *pōnāmus*.

Review: Present indicative of *sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

	Singular	Plural
1	sum = I am	sumus = we are
2	es = you (sing.) are	estis = you (pl.) are
3	est = he/she/it is	sunt = they are

Review: Present subjunctive of *sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

	Singular	Plural
1	sim	sīmus
2	sīs	sītis
3	sit	sint

Review: Imperative of *sum*

es (singular); este (plural)

Review: Infinitive of *sum*

esse

Quiz

The following sentences in English include a form of the verb “to be” in the present tense. Supply the Latin equivalent of *sum*.

1. *Y'all are* students of the Latin language.
2. *Y'all may be* the smartest bunch yet.
3. Casca, why *are there* daggers in this drawer?

4. *Let them be assassins!*
5. *Be gentle, O Venus!*
6. *Be faithful, O disciples!*
7. *I think, therefore I am.*

Answers: 1. *estis*, 2. *sītis*, 3. *sunt*, 4. *sint*, 5. *Es!*, 6. *Este!*, 7. *sum*.

Review: Present indicative of *possum*

possum, posse, potuī: be able, can

	Singular	Plural
1	possum	possumus
2	potes	potestis
3	potest	possunt

Review: Present subjunctive of *possum*

possum, posse, potuī: be able, can

	Singular	Plural
1	possim	possīmus
2	possīs	possītis
3	possit	possint

Review: Imperative of *possum*

potes (singular); poteste (plural)

Review: Infinitive of *possum*

posse

Quiz

The following sentences in English include a form of the verb “to be able” in the present tense. Supply the Latin equivalent of *possum*.

1. *Y'all are able* to conjugate.
2. *Y'all may be able* to read love poetry.
3. These soldiers *can* execute the senator now.
4. *I can* conjugate irregular verbs.
5. *To be able* to conjugate pleases me.

Answers: 1. *potestis*, 2. *possītis*, 3. *possunt*, 4. *possum*, 5. *posse*.

Review: Third-declension nouns, masculine/feminine endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-ēs
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-e	-ibus

Declension of *mīles*

mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles	mīlitēs
Genitive	mīlitis	mīlitum
Dative	mīlitī	mīlitibus
Accusative	mīlitem	mīlitēs
Ablative	mīlite	mīlitibus

Neuter nouns

- As you recall, third-declension nouns of the masculine and feminine genders have the same endings. A masculine soldier, a *mīles*, has the same endings as a feminine *lūx* (“light”).
- The neuter, however, differs from the masculine and feminine nouns in three places: the accusative singular and the nominative and accusative plurals. The neuter endings of the third declension are shown in the following table.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-a
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	***	-a
Ablative	-e	-ibus

- Notice that the nominative form in the singular serves as the accusative singular, as well. In addition, instead of using *-ēs* for the nominative and accusative plurals, we use *-a*.

Declension of *corpus* (third-declension noun)

corpus, corporis, n.: body

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	corpus	corpora
Genitive	corporis	corporum
Dative	corporī	corporibus
Accusative	corpus	corpora
Ablative	corpore	corporibus

Note: In Latin, the word “body” is neuter. In the nominative, “body” is *corpus*. We can find the stem by looking at the genitive form, *corporis*, and removing the ending, *-is*; thus, the stem is *corpor-*. Things in English that have bodies are “corporeal.”



© iStockphoto/Thinkstock

Through French, we use the word *corpus* to refer to a “body” of men, as in the Marine Corps.

Parsing a sentence from Cicero

- In his *Tusculan Disputations*, Cicero, who lived during the 1st century B.C.E., writes: “*Corpora [nōn] sumus*,” “We are not bodies.”
- Who is the subject of *sumus*? The *-mus* on *sumus* tells us that we are the first-person plural subjects, but the word *we* does not appear; hence, we are the unexpressed subjects.
- Is the case of *corpora* nominative or accusative? Do we perform the action of being upon bodies? The answer is no. “To be” merely establishes identity. One does not perform the action of being upon an object. Thus, the word *corpora* is nominative because the bodies are equal to or identified with the subject.
- A predicate is a statement about a subject. When we use a linking verb, however, the predicate is nominative because we say that our statement “is” somehow the subject. Subjects, of course, are nominative. We call such statements of identity that use the nominative case “predicate nominatives.” In this sentence, however, we do not need to know that the word *corpora* is in the predicate nominative in order to understand the sentence.
- Cicero is telling us that human beings are something more than just flesh. We have bodies, but we are not necessarily just bodies.

Parsing a sentence from Caesar

- Consider another example from Caesar: *Hostēs ex corporibus pugnant*. *Hostis* is a masculine noun meaning “enemy”; *ex* is a preposition that takes or governs the ablative case. It means “out of,” “from,” or in this case, “from on top of.” *Pugnant* means “they fight.” Despite the *a*, we don’t say, “Let the enemies fight.” This verb is actually indicative, but because it ends in *-nt*, we know that the word *they* serves as the subject.
- *Hostēs* could be nominative plural, so we could translate the sentence as “The enemies fight.” On the other hand, *hostēs* could be

accusative and the subject could be unexpressed, giving us, “They fight the enemies.” The context makes it clear that Caesar is making “the enemies” the subject of *pugnant*.

- A translation of the whole sentence reads: “The enemies fight from on top of the bodies.”

Verba

corpus, corporis, n.: body

duo: two

ex (prep. + ablative): from, out of

flōs, flōris, m.: flower

hostis, hostis, m.: enemy

liquor, liquōris, m.: liquid, fluid

mulier, mulieris, f.: woman

pugnant: they fight

Memoranda

Please learn the third-declension neuter endings and the declension of *corpus, corporis*, n., “body” (which may also be found in App. §17, A).

Agenda

- Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present indicative.

- sum

2. bibō
 3. possum
- ii. Create your own verb chart for each of the verbs below and conjugate in the present subjunctive.
1. sum
 2. bibō
 3. possum
- iii. Create your own noun chart for each of the nouns below and decline. (Remember that *corpus* is neuter.)
1. mulier
 2. corpus
 3. flōs
- iv. Practice reciting the full declension of the neuter noun *corpus*.
- v. Please translate the following into Latin.
1. to/for the bodies of the soldiers
 2. by/with/from the woman's strength
 3. to/for Caesar's enemies
 4. by the light of the mind
 5. The women drink the liquid.
 6. The enemies fight with (= *cum* + ablative) the soldier.

7. Greetings, (male and female) students of the Latin language!
8. Let the women put away the flowers.
9. Can we cut the flowers?
10. Let us eat so that we may restore (our) strength.

First- and Second-Declension Adjectives

Lecture 7

What we examine next may appear daunting at first glance, but once you have mastered this set of endings, you will be in a position to handle most Latin nouns and adjectives. We will begin by examining adjective endings for first-declension (feminine) and second-declension (masculine and neuter) endings. Although we will focus primarily on adjectives in this lecture, note that these endings also work for all first- and second-declension nouns. For this reason, we will include third-declension noun endings in this lecture for the sake of comparison.

Endings for first, second, and third declensions

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Singular					
Nominative	-a	-us / -er	-um	***	***
Genitive	-ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is
Dative	-ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī
Accusative	-am	-um	-um	-em	***
Ablative	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e
Plural					
Nominative	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a
Genitive	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um
Dative	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a
Ablative	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus

Comparing singular forms across cases

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Nominative	-a	-us / -er	-um	***	***

- Notice that nominative forms do not show many similarities. It's also important to remember that the first-declension feminine singular can look like a neuter plural and vice versa. Similarly, the second-declension neuter singular ending can look like the genitive plural ending of the third declension.
- Because the third declension has such a wide variety of endings in the nominative singular, we don't know what may turn up and, thus, call it a "blank." The ending *-us*, for example, which generally serves as the second-declension masculine ending, is a real possibility for third-declension neuter nouns. The word *corpus* ("body"), for example, is neuter and belongs to the third declension.
- The lesson here is to beware the nominative. We must always check the genitive to know the declension of a noun! The genitive case reveals the declension and, if we remove it, the word's true base.

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Genitive	-ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is

- Notice that declensions share genitive singular endings:
 - Only the *first* declension has a genitive singular ending in *-ae*.
 - Only the *second* declension has a genitive ending in *-ī*.
 - And only the *third* declension has a genitive ending in *-is*.
- The genitive is the key that unlocks the mystery of what declension a noun or adjective belongs to. That's why nouns are listed first in their nominative forms and then in their genitive forms.

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Dative	-ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī
Ablative	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e

- Dative and ablative endings are, in the singular, sometimes but not always the same.
- Except for the first-declension dative singular, *-ae*, which is a diphthong, dative and ablative singular endings tend to be a single vowel sound.

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Accusative	-am	-um	-um	-em	***

- The accusative case shows some real similarities in the singular. Every accusative singular except the third-declension neuter ends in *-m*. That's helpful to know when we look for direct objects.
- Although accusative *-um* will have to be distinguished from third-declension genitive plurals and neuter nominative singulars, the *-m* ending will not be confused with a genitive singular and certainly not with any datives or ablatives, singular or plural.

Comparing plural forms across cases

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Nominative	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a

- The plural nominative again shows us a mixed picture. Apart from the masculine and feminine nominatives of the third declension, we find vowels.

- One bright spot is that all neuter nominative plurals are the same; they all end in *-a*.
- Unfortunately, neuter plurals look like feminine singulars.

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Genitive	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um	-um

- The genitive plural shows some systemic similarities. All genitive plurals end in *-um*.
- Further, the first- and second-declension genitive plurals precede that *-um* with their theme vowels: *ā* for the first-declension feminine (*-ārum*) and *ō* for the second-declension masculine and neuter (*-ōrum*).

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Accusative	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a

- Again, the accusative plural reveals some patterns. Neuter accusatives repeat their nominative forms, *-a*, and all masculine and feminine accusative plurals, whether first, second, or third declension, end in *-s*.
- The first-declension feminine accusative plural precedes that *-s* with its theme vowel *ā*: *-ās*.
- The second-declension masculine accusative plural precedes the *-s* with its theme vowel *ō*: *-ōs*.
- The third-declension masculine and feminine accusative plurals precede the *-s* with *ē*: *-ēs*.

Case	1 st Feminine	2 nd Masculine	2 nd Neuter	3 rd Masc. & Fem.	3 rd Neuter
Dative	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus
Ablative	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus

- The ablative and dative plural endings are quite simple. If we count them up, there are only two of them: *-īs* (pronounced “ees”) for first- and second-declension words and *-ibus* for third-declension words.
- Note that the first- and second-declension dative and ablative plural, *-īs*, differs from the genitive singular of the third declension because the *i* in this *-īs* is long, not short.

Adjectives

- As we know, adjectives modify nouns. In Latin, adjectives take their cue from nouns and agree with them in case, number, and gender but not necessarily ending. Adjectives can change their gender from masculine to feminine to neuter, their number from singular to plural, and their case from nominative to ablative, but they cannot change their declension. Sometimes adjective endings match the endings of the nouns they modify letter for letter, and sometimes they do not, yet adjectives will always agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.
- The word for “big, large, or great” in Latin is *magna* (feminine), *magnus* (masculine), or *magnum* (neuter). Because “big” appears in these three forms, we know that *magnus*, *magna*, *magnum* is a first- and second-declension adjective. A big masculine soldier is *mīles magnus*. A big feminine light is *lux magna*. And a big neuter body is *corpus magnum*. In each instance, we chose the gender of *magnus*, *magna*, *magnum* to match the gender of the noun being modified.
- In a dictionary, *magnus*, *magna*, *magnum* would likely be listed as follows: “**magn•us, -a, -um, adj.**, big.” When we see this listing,

we're supposed to supply the stem for the truncated *-a, -um*, giving us *magnus, magna, magnum*.

- By this logic, “**bon•us, -a, -um, adj.**, good” would, when expanded, give us *bonus, bona, bonum*.
- A somewhat tougher one that ends in *-er* in the masculine is “**liber, -a, -um, adj.**, free.” If we expand it, we get: *liber, libera, liberum*.
- The takeaway here is that first- and second-declension adjectives appear in the nominative singular for the most part as *-us, -a, -um* but sometimes as *-er, -a, -um*.

Declension of *nox perpetua*

nox, noctis, f.: night

perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum: everlasting

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	nox perpetua	noctēs perpetuae
Genitive	noctis perpetuae	noctium perpetuārum
Dative	noctī perpetuae	noctibus perpetuīs
Accusative	noctem perpetuam	noctēs perpetuās
Ablative	nocte perpetuā	noctibus perpetuīs

Note: In each instance, *perpetua* agrees in case, number, and gender with *nox*, yet their endings never match.

Declension of *senex sevērus**senex, senīs, m.:* old man*sevērus, sevēra, sevērum:* stern

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	senex sevērus	senēs sevērī
Genitive	senis sevērī	senum sevērōrum
Dative	senī sevērō	senibus sevērīs
Accusative	senem sevērum	senēs sevērōs
Ablative	sene sevērō	senibus sevērīs

Declension of *bāsium fervidum**bāsium, bāsī, n.:* kiss*fervidus, fervida, fervidum:* fiery

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	bāsium fervidum	bāsia fervida
Genitive	bāsī fervidī	bāsīōrum fervidōrum
Dative	bāsīō fervidō	bāsīs fervidīs
Accusative	bāsium fervidum	bāsia fervida
Ablative	bāsīō fervidō	bāsīs fervidīs

Note: The genitive here, *bāsī*, ends in *-ī*, not *-is*, so this word is not a neuter third declension but a neuter second declension. As mentioned at the beginning of this lecture, first- and second-declension adjective endings work for first- and second-declension nouns, too. If you can decline a neuter adjective, you can decline a neuter noun. Sometimes, the endings on the

adjective will match the endings on the noun, as well as agree with them. We will review these declensions again in the next lecture.

Verba

bonus, bona, bonum: good

grātissimus, grātissima, grātissimum: most pleasing

liber, libera, liberum: free

magnus, magna, magnum: big, large, great

miser, misera, miserum: wretched, unfortunate, miserable

nox, noctis, f.: night

perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum: everlasting, never-ending

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum: beautiful

senex, senis, m.: old man

sevērus, sevēra, sevērūm: stern, severe

Memoranda

Please learn the first- and second-declension endings. Learn the declension of *magnus, magna, magnum*, “big” (which may be found in App. §23).

Agenda

- i. In the noun chart below, provide the first- and second-declension adjective endings.

Case	1 st -Declension Feminine	2 nd -Declension Masculine	2 nd -Declension Neuter
Singular			
Nominative			
Genitive			
Dative			
Accusative			
Ablative			
Plural			
Nominative			
Genitive			
Dative			
Accusative			
Ablative			

- ii. In the noun chart below, decline the noun-adjective combination *good soldier*. The nominative and genitive singular forms are done for you.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles bonus	
Genitive	mīlitis bonī	
Dative		
Accusative		
Ablative		

- iii. Create your own noun chart for each of the noun-adjective combinations below and decline. Make sure you check the gender before proceeding.

- large body
- beautiful woman

iv. Give the case and number of the following noun forms and then translate each into English. Some forms have more than one possible case.

1. mulieris bonae
2. magnā virtūte
3. lūcī grātissimae
4. noctem perpetuam
5. mentēs pulchrae
6. mīlitēs liberōs
7. mēnsibus perpetuīs
8. hostis sevērus
9. pulchrārum mulierum
10. senem bonum
11. magna corpora
12. flōrēs pulchrī
13. lūcum magnārum
14. vērītātibus sevērīs
15. mīlitī bonō

First- and Second-Declension Nouns

Lecture 8

In the last lecture, we walked through the challenges of the first- and second-declension adjectives. In this lecture, we will solidify our grasp of first- and second-declension endings by continuing to expand our range with first- and second-declension nouns. The good news is that the endings for second-declension nouns are exactly the same as the endings for first- and second-declension adjectives. The only oddity is that some masculine nouns appear in the first declension and some feminine nouns appear in the second declension. However, we will begin with nouns that conform to type.

Review: First-declension endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-a	-ae
Genitive	-ae	-ārum
Dative	-ae	-īs
Accusative	-am	-ās
Ablative	-ā	-īs

Declension of *puella* (first-declension noun)

puella, puellae, f.: girl

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puella	puellae
Genitive	puellae	puellārum

Dative	puellae	puellīs
Accusative	puellam	puellās
Ablative	puellā	puellīs

- Remember that the genitive case tells us what declension a noun belongs to. Every noun that has a genitive singular ending in *-ae*, as *puellae* does, is a first-declension noun. If the genitive singular ends in *-is*, it's a third-declension noun.
- Also remember that to find a noun's stem or base, we go to the genitive singular form and remove the ending. In this instance, if the genitive is *puellae* and we remove the genitive ending *-ae*, we reveal the base: *puell-*.

Declension of *fēmina* (first-declension noun)

fēmina, fēminae, f.: woman

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	fēmina	fēminae
Genitive	fēminae	fēminārum
Dative	fēminae	fēminīs
Accusative	fēminam	fēminās
Ablative	fēminā	fēminīs

The ending *-ae* in the genitive singular form, *fēminae*, tells us that this can only be a first-declension word; thus, we must follow the first-declension pattern.

If we then remove the genitive ending, we find that the base is *fēmin-*.

Declension of *agricola* (first-declension noun)

agricola, agricolae, m.: farmer

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	agricola	agricolae
Genitive	agricolae	agricolārum
Dative	agricolae	agricolīs
Accusative	agricolam	agricolās
Ablative	agricolā	agricolīs

- The overwhelming majority of first-declension nouns are feminine in gender, but there are a few masculine nouns of the first declension, such as the Latin word for “farmer,” *agricola, agricolae*.
- The genitive ending *-ae* tells us that this is a first-declension noun. If we remove the genitive ending from *agricolae*, we get the base *agricol-*.

Review: Second-declension masculine endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-us / -er	-ī
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-ōs
Ablative	-ō	-īs

Declension of *servus* (second-declension noun)

servus, servī, m.: slave

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	servus	servī
Genitive	servī	servōrum
Dative	servō	servīs
Accusative	servum	servōs
Ablative	servō	servīs

- Most second-declension masculine nominative singulars end in *-us*, as *servus* does, but some end in *-r*.
- We know that *servus* belongs to the second declension because the genitive ends in *-ī*. If we remove the genitive ending, we reveal the base, *serv-*.

Declension of *puer* (second-declension noun)

puer, puerī, m.: boy

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	puer	puerī
Genitive	puerī	puerōrum
Dative	puerō	puerīs
Accusative	puerum	puerōs
Ablative	puerō	puerīs

- We know that *puer*, *puerī* (“boy”) belongs to the second declension because its genitive ends in *-ī*. By definition, every noun with a genitive singular ending in *-ī* belongs to the second declension.
- If we remove the genitive ending, we reveal the base: *puer-*.

Declension of *fraxinus* (second-declension noun)

fraxinus, fraxinī, f.: ash tree

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	fraxinus	fraxinī
Genitive	fraxinī	fraxinōrum
Dative	fraxinō	fraxinīs
Accusative	fraxinum	fraxinōs
Ablative	fraxinō	fraxinīs

- Some words in the second declension look masculine but are feminine, such as the word for “ash tree,” *fraxinus, fraxinī*. The word is feminine, but you can’t tell by looking at it. It declines just like *servus*.
- If we remove the genitive ending *-ī*, we get the base *fraxin-*.

Review: Second-declension neuter endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-um	-a
Genitive	-ī	-ōrum
Dative	-ō	-īs
Accusative	-um	-a
Ablative	-ō	-īs

Note: The genitive ending *-ī* tells us that a noun belongs to the second declension. But if a second-declension noun has a nominative that ends in *-um*, that noun is neuter.

Declension of *bellum* (second-declension noun)

bellum, bellī, n.: war

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	bellum	bella
Genitive	bellī	bellōrum
Dative	bellō	bellīs
Accusative	bellum	bella
Ablative	bellō	bellīs

- In *bellum, bellī*, we see a nominative ending in *-um* followed by a genitive ending in *-ī*. The *-um* tells us that “war” is neuter, and the *-ī* tells us that it belongs to the second declension.
- If we remove the genitive ending, we reveal the base: *bell-*.

Modifying nouns

- Let’s now modify the nouns we just declined with a first- and second-declension adjective: *bonus* (masculine), *bona* (feminine), *bonum* (neuter), which means “good.” Recall that adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify in case, number, and gender.
- This first exercise is simple. Provide the Latin equivalent for the following English phrases, in the nominative case:

1. the good girl
2. the good woman

3. the good farmer
4. the good slave
5. the good boy
6. the good ash tree
7. the good war

Answers: 1. *puella bona*, 2. *fēmina bona*, 3. *agricola bonus*, 4. *servus bonus*, 5. *puer bonus*, 6. *fraxinus bona*, 7. *bellum bonum*.

- In the next exercise, you'll hear a noun-adjective combination in English. Translate that phrase into its Latin equivalent.

1. to or for the good girls
2. of the good girls
3. “verb” the good wars
4. by, with, or from the good slave
5. by, with, or from the good farmer
6. of the good slaves
7. of the good farmers

Answers: 1. dative plural, *puellīs bonīs*; 2. genitive plural, *puellārum bonārum*; 3. accusative plural, *bella bona*; 4. ablative singular, *servō bonō*; 5. ablative singular, *agricolā bonō*; 6. genitive plural, *servōrum bonōrum*; 7. genitive plural, *agricolārum bonōrum*.

Parsing a Latin sentence

- Let's consider a sentence adapted from Valerius Maximus's first book of *Memorable Deeds and Sayings*, his *Facta et Dicta Memorabilia*. The sentence gives us some insight into interactions between the chief priest of Rome's state religion and one of the priestesses who acted as guardians of the goddess Vesta's eternal flame.
- The sentence reads as follows: *Publius Licinius pontifex maximus virginem Vestālem, quia nocte ignem aeternum male custōdit, flāgrō admonet.*
- Carefully parsing the sentence, we arrive at this translation: "Publius Licinius, the chief priest, reminds the Vestal priestess with a whip because at night she watches over the eternal flame poorly."
- Using the vocabulary of the original sentence, try to translate the following variations:

1. Virginēs Vestalēs pontificem maximum flāgrīs custōdiunt.
2. Virginēs Vestalēs nocte pontificem maximum custōdiunt.

Answers: 1. The Vestal priestesses guard the chief priest with whips. 2. The Vestal priestesses guard the chief priest at night.

Verba

aeternus, aeterna, aeternum: eternal

agricola, agricolae, m.: farmer

astrum, astrī, n.: star

bāsium, bāsī, n.: kiss

bellum, bellī, n.: war

cibus, cibī, m.: food

fēmina, fēminae, f.: woman

ignis, ignis, m.: fire

male (adv.): poorly

maximus, maxima, maximum: greatest, chief

pontifex, pontificis, m.: priest

puella, puellae, f.: girl

puer, puerī, m.: boy

quia (conj.): since, because

servus, servī, m.: slave

vīnum, vīnī, n.: wine

virgō, virginis, f.: young woman, maiden (*virgō Vestālis* = Vestal priestess)

Memoranda

Please learn the declensions of *puella, puellae*, f., “girl” (App. §15); *servus, servī*, m., “slave” (App. §16); and *bellum, bellī*, n., “war” (App. §16).

Agenda

- i. Create your own noun chart for each of the noun-adjective combinations below and decline. Make sure you check the gender before proceeding.
 1. chief priest
 2. eternal star

3. miserable woman (use *fēmina*)

4. miserable farmer

ii. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. to/for the beautiful maiden

2. by/with/from the great war

3. of the large fire

4. of the good boys

5. most pleasing kisses (as subject)

6. of the free women

7. to/for the stern slave

8. to/for the eternal fires

9. the good girls (as direct object)

10. of eternal night

iii. Please translate the following into English.

1. *Servī fēminārum bene legunt.*

2. *Puer miser male vīvit.*

3. *Bibant virginēs miserae.*

4. *Militēs sevērī bellum magnum agunt.*

5. *Sit magnus ignis.*

6. Possuntne agricolae bonī cibum vendere?
7. Vēritātem pontificī maximō senex bonus dīcat.
8. Caede flōrēs pulchrōs!

Introduction to the Passive Voice

Lecture 9

We begin this lecture by reviewing all the active verb forms we've studied. However, in addition to tense (or time) and mood (i.e., indicative, imperative, subjunctive), verbs have voice. They can be active or passive. The subjects of active verbs "do" their verbs; they perform the action of the verb on objects: "You drive a car." "I love this book." But what if a subject does nothing and lets the verb be performed on it? In that case, the subject is passive: "I am hit." To make the distinction between the active and passive voices in English, we need the helping verb *to be* plus a past passive participle. But in Latin, the distinction is made through personal endings.

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Review: Present active indicative conjugation of *agō*

agō, agere, ēgī, actum: do, drive

	Singular	Plural
1	agō	agimus
2	agis	agitis
3	agit	agunt

Present active subjunctive conjugation of *agō**agō, agere, ēgī, actum*: do, drive

	Singular	Plural
1	agam	agāmus
2	agās	agātis
3	agat	agant

Imperative of *agō*

age (singular); agite (plural)

Infinitive of *agō*

agere

Passive personal endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-r	-mur
2	-ris	-minī
3	-tur	-ntur

Comparing active and passive of *agō* (indicative mood)

Active		Passive	
agō	I drive	agor	I am driven
agis	You drive	ageris	You are driven
agit	S/he or it drives	agitur	S/he or it is driven
agimus	We drive	agimur	We are driven
agitis	Y'all drive	agiminī	Y'all are driven
agunt	They drive	aguntur	They are driven

- To form the present-tense active indicative, we started with the principle parts *agō, agere, ēgī, actum* and added the active personal endings *-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt* to the base *ag-*, inserting either the vowel *i* or *u*.
- The passive endings *-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur* are applied similarly to the base *ag-*, but we observe some slight adjustments in the vowel to accommodate Roman pronunciation.
 - In the first-person singular, we use an “o” sound before the *-r*, and in the second-person singular, the short *i* of *agis* becomes even more unstressed—the unstressed “uh” sound we hear in *ageris*.
 - Other than this one exception, the vowel sequence *o, i, u* remains virtually unchanged.

Comparing active and passive of *agō* (subjunctive mood)

Active		Passive	
agam	I may drive	agar	I may be driven
agās	You may drive	agāris	You may be driven
agat	S/he or it may drive	agātur	S/he or it may be driven
agāmus	We may drive	agāmur	We may be driven
agātis	Y’all may drive	agāminī	Y’all may be driven
agant	They may drive	agantur	They may be driven

- The subjunctive is even more regular. As you recall, for the active, we start with the personal endings *-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt* and attach them to the base *ag-*, inserting the vowel *a*.
- For the present passive subjunctive, we similarly apply the personal passive endings *-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur* to the base *ag-*, inserting the vowel *a*.

Comparing active and passive of *agō* (infinitive)

- For the infinitive, we start with the second principle part, *agere* (“to drive”), remove the active infinitive ending *-ere*, substitute the present passive infinitive ending *-ī*, and get *agī* (“to be driven”).

Comparing active and passive of *agō* (imperative mood)

Active		Passive	
age!	Drive!	agere!	Be driven!
agite!	Drive (y'all)!	agiminī!	Be driven (y'all)!

- Note that the second-person singular command form, *agere*, looks and sounds like the active infinitive “to drive.” Note, too, that the second-person plural command form, *agiminī*, looks like the second-person plural indicative.
- These forms can be confusing, but context will help us sort them out.

Present passive indicative of *dūcō*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: lead

	Singular	Plural
1	dūcor	dūcimur
2	dūceris	dūciminī
3	dūcitur	dūcuntur

Present passive subjunctive of *dūcō*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: lead

	Singular	Plural
1	dūcar	dūcāmur

2	dūcāris	dūcāminī
3	dūcātur	dūcantur

Present passive infinitive of *dūcō*

dūcī

Present passive imperative of *dūcō*

dūcere (singular); dūciminī (plural)

Quiz

In each of the following English sentences, a form of the verb “to lead” appears in the passive. Provide the Latin equivalent.

1. The legion *is led* by Caesar.
2. *Let* the legion *be led* by Labienus!
3. *We are being led* into prison.
4. If *we should be led* into prison.
5. *Let them be led* by us!
6. *Are y'all being led* to prison?
7. *You, my friend, are being led* to prison.
8. *To be led* to prison, however, is better than to be crucified.
9. Listen well, my friend, and *be led* to glory!
10. Sorry, my friends, *be led* to prison!

Answers: 1. *dūcitur*, indicative, statement of fact; 2. *dūcātur*, hortatory subjunctive; 3. *dūcimur*, indicative; 4. *dūcāmur*, subjunctive in a condition; 5. *dūcantur*, hortatory subjunctive; 6. *dūciminī*, indicative; 7. *dūceris*, indicative; 8. *dūcī*, infinitive; 9. *dūcere*, singular imperative; 10. *dūciminī*, plural imperative.

The agent of a passive verb

- In English, we use the preposition “by” to indicate the performer or agent of a passive verb: “The legion is led by Caesar.” Latin likewise uses a preposition, *ab* or *ā* (the “b” can fall off before consonants), together with the ablative.
- Here’s an example: *Legiō ab Caesare dūcitur*, “The legion (nominative subject) is led (present passive indicative) by (preposition) Caesar (ablative of personal agent),” or “The legion is being led by Caesar.”
- Let’s compare two somewhat similar sentences: (1) *Caesar pugiōne interficitur*; “Caesar (nominative subject) is killed (*interficitur*) by an ablative dagger (*pugiōne*).” (2) *Caesar ā Brūtō interficitur*; “Caesar (nominative subject) is killed (*interficitur*) by an ablative Brutus (*Brūtō*).”
 - Notice that with the person, Brutus, we inserted the preposition *ā*, but for the dagger, we did not; we used the ablative by itself. A dagger is merely the means or tool that a thinking agent (i.e., a person) employs.
 - Caesar is killed by means of a dagger by the personal agent Brutus. Personal agents must be indicated by deploying the preposition *ab* or *ā*. By contrast, the means, tool, or instrument by which an action is accomplished should be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Translating Cicero and Vergil

- In a speech delivered in defense of the Greek poet Archias, Cicero writes, “*Optimus quisque glōriā dūcitur*,” meaning “Each or every best person (*optimus quisque*) by means of glory or fame (*glōriā*) is

led (*dūcitur*),” or “Every best person is led by fame.” *Glōriā* here is the fame that derives from great accomplishments, such as winning a major battle.

- In other words, Cicero suggests that glory, fame, or honor is the means by which each best person is led or, to use a more modern concept, motivated.
- The best among us are motivated by fame or the honor that derives from accomplishment.
- In another speech, Cicero took a less kindly view of someone’s motivation: “*Favōre populī dūcitur*,” meaning “He is being led—or motivated—by the favor of the people.” Each or every best person is motivated by *glōriā*, the fame that comes from accomplishment or honor, not by means of the favor of the unruly mob.
- In his story of *pīus Aeneas* (“god-fearing Aeneas”), Vergil expressed how the Romans understood themselves: “*Auguriīs agimur dīvum*,” meaning “We are driven or led by the divine signs of the gods.”

Verba

ab (preposition + ablative): by, from (the *b* can be omitted when *ab* is coupled with a word that begins with a consonant: *a Caesare* = by Caesar)

colō, colere, coluī, cultum: worship

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: lead; consider, regard

legiō, legiōnis, f.: legion

Memoranda

Please learn the personal passive endings of the Latin verb. Learn the present tense passive in the indicative and subjunctive, the present passive infinitive, and the present passive imperatives of *pōnō* (which may also be found in App. §55).

Agenda

i. In the verb chart below, give the active personal endings of Latin verbs.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

ii. In the verb chart below, give the passive personal endings of Latin verbs.

	Singular	Plural
1		
2		
3		

iii. Create your own verb chart for each of the following verbs and conjugate in the mood and voice indicated.

1. colō (indicative passive)
2. dēsinō (subjunctive passive)
3. legō (subjunctive active)
4. dūcō (indicative active)
5. mittō (subjunctive passive)

iv. Translate the following into Latin. (Each answer will be a single word.)

1. I am sent.
2. I may be sent.

3. We send.
 4. Let us lead.
 5. Lead! (addressing one person)
 6. Let them be led.
 7. to be sold
 8. You (plural) are selling.
 9. It is being sold.
 10. Be driven! (addressing more than one person)
 11. to drive
 12. I may drive.
- v. Describe the difference between the ablative of means and the ablative of agent.
- vi. Please translate the following into Latin.
1. The soldiers are being led by Caesar.
 2. He is able to be led by truth.

Third -io and Fourth-Conjugation Verbs

Lecture 10

In the last lecture, we studied the passive voice. We'll return to the passive voice in a future lecture, but now, to avoid getting bogged down in too many endings at the same time, we'll focus more exclusively on the active voice. Keep in mind, however, that our knowledge of the model verb *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*, both active and passive, represents an essential basis for understanding some small variations on the pattern of *pōnō* and is, thus, a key to unlocking two more conjugations that follow the pattern of this third conjugation closely: specifically, third -io and fourth-conjugation verbs.

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Review: Present active indicative conjugation of *pōnō*

pōnō, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	<i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnimus</i>
2	<i>pōnis</i>	<i>pōnitis</i>
3	<i>pōnit</i>	<i>pōnunt</i>

Review: Present active subjunctive conjugation of *pōnō*

pōnō, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnam	pōnāmus
2	pōnās	pōnātis
3	pōnat	pōnant

Review: Imperative of *pōnō*

pōne (singular); pōnite (plural)

Review: Infinitive of *pōnō*

pōnere

Review: Passive personal endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-r	-mur
2	-ris	-minī
3	-tur	-ntur

Present passive indicative conjugation of *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnor	pōnimur
2	pōneris	pōniminī
3	pōnitur	pōnuntur

Comparison of three verbs (indicative)

Present Active Indicative		
pōnō	capiō	sentiō
pōnis	capis	sentīs
pōnit	capit	senti
pōnimus	capimus	sentīmus
pōnitis	capitis	sentītis
pōnunt	capiunt	sentiunt

- As you can see, there are two minor differences between the present active indicative conjugations of *pōnō* (“I put”) and *capiō* (“I take”). With *capiō*, we insert an *i* before the *o* of the first-person singular and another *i* before the *u* of the third-person plural. The verb *capiō* represents a subset of the third conjugation, which we call the “third -io.”
- The verb in the third column, *sentiō*, demonstrates more than just an *i* before the *o* of the first-person singular and another *i* before the *u* of the third-person plural. The pronunciation of some forms of *sentiō* is, as a result of some long ī’s (marked with macrons), rather different in some places. The *ī*’s in *sentiō* are long in the second-person singular, the first-person plural, and the second-person plural. This has a major impact on accent.
- In the first-person plural, the accent in *sentīmus* shifts to the second-to-last syllable because the *i* in *sentīmus* is long. The same phenomenon occurs in the second-person plural. *Sentiō* is different enough to represent a separate conjugation, called the fourth conjugation.

Patterns in the three verbs

	Third	Third <i>-io</i>	Fourth
	pōnō, pōnere	capiō, capere	sentiō, sentīre
Pattern	-ō, -ēre	-iō, -ēre	-iō, -īre
Stem	pōnē-	capē-	sentī-

- The first two principal parts of a Latin verb determine the conjugation and will help us decide whether to insert an *i* before the *o* of the first-person singular and the *u* of the third-person plural and, if the verb belongs to the fourth conjugation, to make the *i* of the other persons long (i.e., pronounced “ee”).
- If we remove the *-re* from the second principal part, we obtain the verb stem. For example, if we remove the *-re* from *pōnere*, we get the stem *pōnē-*. Similarly, for the third *-io* verb *capiō, capere*, if we remove the *-re* from *capere*, we get the stem *capē-*. But with the fourth-conjugation verb *sentio, sentīre*, if we remove the *-re* from *sentīre*, we get the stem *sentī-*. The *ī* in the stem is the source of variation in pronunciation, as well as some other differences.

Quiz

You will hear the first two principal parts of a verb in Latin. Decide whether the verb is third conjugation, third *-io*, or fourth.

1. *cēdō, cēdere* (go away or yield)
2. *condūcō, condūcere* (lead)
3. *veniō, venīre* (come, go, or arrive)
4. *fugiō, fugere* (flee)
5. *bibō, bibere* (drink)

6. *cupiō, cupere* (want, desire)

7. *custōdiō, custōdīre* (guard)

8. *amō, amāre* (love)

Answers: 1. third, 2. third, 3. fourth, 4. third *-io*, 5. third, 6. third *-io*, 7. fourth, 8. first (trick question!).

Comparison of three verbs (subjunctive)

Present Active Subjunctive		
pōnam	capiam	sentiam
pōnās	capiās	sentīās
pōnat	capiat	sentiat
pōnāmus	capiāmus	sentīāmus
pōnātis	capiātis	sentīātis
pōnant	capiant	sentiant

- We form the present active subjunctive for *cupiō* and *sentīō* in the same manner as we did for *pōnō*. We use the personal active ending *-m* in the first-person singular and insert the vowel *a* before the active personal endings.
- Note, however, that if there is an *i* before the *o* in a verb's first principal part, that *i* will appear before the *a* of the subjunctive, as well.

Comparing active imperative forms

Present Active Imperative		
pōne!	cape!	sentī!
pōnite!	capite!	sentīte!

- If we compare the command forms for these three conjugations, we see that the third -*io* imperatives look the same as the imperatives of the third. *Pōne* and *cape* both end in a short *e*, just like their stems. In the plural, we find *pōnite* and *capite*.
- The fourth conjugation, in contrast, retains the *ī* that we found in its base. The singular command is *sentī* and the plural is *sentīte*. The *ī* affects the accent of the second-person plural, as well. *Sentīte* has an accent on the second-to-last syllable, whereas *pōnite* and *cápite* have their accents on the third-from-last syllables.

Pliny the Elder

- Pliny the Elder wrote an encyclopedia of natural history, the *Historia Naturālis*, which is a treasure trove of ancient attitudes toward just about everything.
- In his work, Pliny discusses bodies and the pleasures of the body. In particular, he wrote, “*Duo sunt liquōrēs hūmānīs corporibus grātissimī, intus vīnī, forīs oleī,*” meaning, “Two are the fluids to human bodies most pleasing, indoors [the fluid] of wine, outdoors [the fluid] of olive oil.”

Verba

adsum, adesse, adfuī (compound of *sum*): be present

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: seize, capture

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum: desire, want

custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī, custōdītum: guard, defend, protect

fugiō, fugere, fūgī: flee, run away

laetus, laeta, laetum: happy, joyful

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum: feel, perceive

urbs, urbis, f.: city

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum: come

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts, the present-tense active indicative and subjunctive, present-tense active infinitive, and imperatives of third -io conjugation *capiō* (cf. App. §56) and fourth conjugation *sentiō* (cf. App. §57).

Agenda

i. Make a verb chart for each of the following verbs and conjugate in the present tense active of the mood indicated.

1. *capiō* (indicative)
2. *fugiō* (subjunctive)
3. *sentiō* (subjunctive)
4. *veniō* (indicative)

ii. Please translate the following into Latin. (Each answer will be a single word.)

1. They may come.
2. We are coming.
3. Flee! (plural)
4. Let him seize.
5. to desire

6. Be present! (singular)

7. You (plural) are present.

8. Protect! (plural)

9. She is protecting.

10. I may feel.

iii. Make a noun chart and decline *happy woman*.

iv. Please translate the following into English.

1. In Bethlehem venīre nōn possunt.

2. Possumusne in Bethlehem venīre?

3. Veniant in Bethlehem.

4. Urbem legiō magna custōdīre potest.

5. Vēritātem custōdiat senex.

6. Possuntne mīlitēs sevērī hostēs Caesaris vincere?

7. Ex urbe fugiāmus.

8. Fugimus ex urbe.

9. Mīlitēs veniunt, ut urbem custōdiant.

10. Discipulī pulchram linguam Latīnam discere cupiunt, ut laetī sint.

First- and Second-Conjugation Verbs

Lecture 11

In the last lecture, we expanded our verbal range by adding two more conjugations, the third *-io* and the fourth. In this lecture, we'll look at the final two conjugations, the first and second. These conjugations are traditionally taught first because they're considered easier—they're more regular—but they tend to condition students to expect regularity. Thus, if you have mastered the vowel variations in the third conjugation, you won't have any difficulty with the first and second conjugations.

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Review: Present active indicative conjugation of *capīō*

capīō, capere, cēpī, captum: take, grab, seize

	Singular	Plural
1	capīō	capimus
2	capis	capitis
3	capit	capiunt

Review: Present active subjunctive conjugation of *capīō*

capīō, capere, cēpī, captum: take, grab, seize

	Singular	Plural
1	capiam	capiāmus
2	capiās	capiātis
3	capiat	capiant

Review: Imperative of *capiō*

cape (singular); capite (plural)

Review: Infinitive of *capiō*

capere

Comparison of three verbs

Present Active Indicative		
1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj. - <i>io</i>
-ō, -āre	-eō, -ēre	-iō, -ēre
amō	videō	capiō
amās	vidēs	capis
amat	videt	capit
amāmus	vidēmus	capimus
amātis	vidētis	capitis
amant	vident	capiunt

- For all three verbs, the personal active endings remain -*o* or -*m*, -*s*, -*t*, -*mus*, -*tis*, -*nt*. For *amō*, we find an *a* as the theme vowel, and for *videō*, we find an *e*.
- But the letter *a* is the sign of the subjunctive! That's true for all conjugations except the first. For first-conjugation verbs, the letter *a* is the sign of the indicative.

- We can distinguish the conjugations by their principal parts. We call this “conjugation identification”; all you need to determine the pattern or conjugation are the first two principal parts.

Comparing patterns

	1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.	3 rd - <i>io</i> Conj.	4 th Conj.
Pr. Parts	<i>amō</i> , <i>amāre</i>	<i>videō</i> , <i>vidēre</i>	<i>pōnō</i> , <i>pōnere</i>	<i>capiō</i> , <i>capere</i>	<i>sentiō</i> , <i>sentīre</i>
Pattern	-ō, -āre	-eō, -ēre	-ō, -ēre	-iō, -ēre	-iō, -īre
Stem	<i>amā-</i>	<i>vidē-</i>	<i>pōnē-</i>	<i>capē-</i>	<i>sentī-</i>
Theme Vowel	long ā	long ē	short ě	short ě	long ī

- Beginning with the first conjugation, we see that *amō* (“I love”) ends in an *ō*; the second principal part, *amāre* (“to love”), reveals *āre*. An *ō* followed by an *āre* means that the verb belongs to the first conjugation. If we remove the *-re* from the infinitive, we reveal the verb stem and its theme vowel: *amā-* and a long *ā*. Note that the *ā* is what we found in our first table between the base and the personal active endings.
- The second-conjugation verb, *videō*, *vidēre* (“to see”), differs from the third conjugation in two ways. We see an *e* before the *ō* in the first principal part, and the second principal part has *ēre*, which of course, puts the stress accent on the second-to-last syllable. The pattern for second-conjugation verbs is, thus, *eō* in the first principal part, followed by *ēre* in the second principal part. And if we remove the *-re* from *vidēre*, we get the stem *vidē-*, with long *ē* as the theme vowel.
- The pattern for the third conjugation is *ō* followed by *ere*. The stem of *pōnere* is *pōne*, and the theme vowel is short *ě*.

- The pattern for the third *-io* is *iō* followed by *ere*. The stem of *capere* is *cape*, and the theme vowel is short *ĕ*.
- Finally, the pattern for the fourth-conjugation verb *sentīō*, *sentīre* (“to feel”) is *iō* followed by *īre*. The stem of *sentīre* is *sentī*, and the theme vowel is long *ī*.

Quiz

Identify the correct conjugation for each of the following Latin verbs.

1. *cupiō*, *cupere* (desire)
2. *laudō*, *laudāre* (praise)
3. *habeō*, *habēre* (have or hold)
4. *audiō*, *audīre* (hear)

Answers: 1. third *-io*, 2. first, 3. second, 4. fourth.

Comparing present active indicative

Present Active Indicative		
1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.
-ō, -āre	-eō, -ēre	-ō, -ĕre
amō	videō	pōnō
amās	vidēs	pōnis
amat	videt	pōnit
amāmus	vidēmus	pōnimus
amātis	vidētis	pōnitis
amant	vident	pōnunt

Comparing present active subjunctive

Present Active Subjunctive		
1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.
-ō, -āre	-eō, -ēre	-ō, -ēre
amem	videam	pōnam
amēs	videās	pōnās
amet	videat	pōnat
amēmus	videāmus	pōnāmus
amētis	videātis	pōnātis
ament	videant	pōnant

Comparing imperative forms

Present Active Imperative				
First	Second	Third	Third -io	Fourth
amā!	vidē!	pōne!	cape!	sentī!
amāte!	vidēte!	pōnite!	capite!	sentīte!

O Come, All Ye Faithful

Adeste fidēlēs laetī triumphantēs

Venīte, venīte in Bethlehem.

Nātum vidēte Rēgem angelōrum.

Venīte adōrēmus

Venīte adōrēmus

Venīte adōrēmus

Dominum.

Verba

adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātum: worship, adore

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

angelus, angeli, m.: angel, messenger

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum: hear, listen to

domina, dominae, f.: mistress

dominus, dominī, m.: master, lord

habēō, habēre, habuī, habitum: have, hold; consider

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum: praise

liber, librī, m.: book

rēx, rēgis, m.: king

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see, discern

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts, the present-tense active indicative and subjunctive, present-tense active infinitive, and imperatives of first conjugation *amō* (cf. App. §53) and second conjugation *videō* (cf. App. §54). Additional remarks on conjugation may be found in App. §§49–51.

Agenda

i. Make a noun chart and decline *good king*.

ii. Fill in the blanks.

1. The infinitive of first-conjugation verbs ends in _____.
2. The infinitive of second-conjugation verbs ends in _____.
3. The infinitive of third-conjugation verbs ends in _____.
4. The infinitive of third *-io* conjugation verbs ends in _____.
5. The infinitive of fourth-conjugation verbs ends in _____.

iii. Make a verb chart for each of the following verbs and conjugate in the present active of the mood indicated.

1. audiō (indicative)
2. amō (indicative)
3. habeo (subjunctive)
4. video (indicative)
5. adorō (subjunctive)

iv. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. We adore the great master.
2. Let her adore the good king.
3. See (singular) the king of angels!
4. She can hear the king's legions.
5. Do you (singular) love the beautiful soldier?

- 6.** You (plural) may praise the great woman's strength.
- 7.** They are praising the truth.
- 8.** Love the truth, Caesar!
- 9.** She is not happy and deceives the Roman people.
- 10.** We do not see the great king but we can perceive the strength of (his) soldiers.
- 11.** We are not able to love the stern master.
- 12.** Let the master read good books, so that he may love the truth.
- 13.** He does not have strength of mind.
- 14.** Let us have food and wine!
- 15.** They come to Bethlehem so that they may adore the king.

Reading a Famous Latin Love Poem

Lecture 12

In this lecture, we will reap the rewards of our work by reading a love poem by Catullus in the original Latin. The poem tells of Catullus's plan to prevent the possibility that "judgmental old men" might cast a spell on him and his lover, Lesbia, if they knew the exact number of kisses the two had exchanged. Catullus will foil the old men by having Lesbia give him an uncountable number of kisses. This poem will not only allow us to review the forms we have studied so far, but it will also enable us to love in Latin.

Catullus (84–54 B.C.E.)

- The Roman poet Catullus lived in the age of Julius Caesar and wrote poems to a woman he called Lesbia. Sources identify her as one of the famous Clodia sisters, all given the feminine form of their father's (masculine) name, Clodius.
- In Catullus's day, women of the ruling class often conducted affairs with younger lovers, especially younger lovers who aimed to rise in politics. Catullus may have fallen into this category. We know that his father was important enough to entertain Caesar in his home. And the young Catullus had to apologize for some satirical verses he had written about the famous proconsul of Gaul. Catullus was a well-educated scion of the ruling class.
- Clodia was the wife of a powerful politician; thus, it is perhaps not surprising that Catullus used a pseudonym for her in his poems. He called her Lesbia, after the island Lesbos that was home to Sappho, the famous Greek female love poet.

Let us live, my Lesbia, and let us love

by Catullus

Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevērīōrum
omnēs ūnūs aestimēmus assis!
Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt:
nōbis cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
Dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum,
dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum,
deinde usque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerimus,
conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsīōrum.

Let us live, my Lesbia, and let us love,
and the rumors of the judgmental old men
all (of them) let us reckon at the value of a single penny!
Suns can set and return:
for us when once the brief light has set,
a single everlasting night must be slept.
Give me a thousand kisses, then a hundred,
then another thousand, then a second hundred,
then up to another thousand, then a hundred.
Then, when many thousands we shall have made,
we will confuse those (kisses), so that we do not know,
or so that someone evil cannot cast a spell,
as he would know how many kisses there were.

Verba

aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātum: estimate, value, rate

alter, altera, alterum: another, the other

atque (conjunction): and

meus, mea, meum: my

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum: fall, fall down, go down, set

rūmor, rūmōris, m.: gossip, report

sōl, sōlis, m.: sun

Memoranda

Please memorize as many lines of Catullus 5 (*Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia*) as you care to have on hand for your own personal performances. A collateral benefit of memorizing poetry is that you will then have examples in mind when you search your memory for vocabulary and endings.

Agenda

- i. Make a verb chart for each of the following verbs and conjugate in the present tense of the voice and mood indicated.
 1. vīvō (active indicative)
 2. amō (active subjunctive)
 3. aestimō (passive subjunctive)
 4. amō (passive indicative)
 5. vīvō (active subjunctive)

ii. Make a verb chart for each of the following irregular verbs and conjugate in the present tense of the mood indicated:

1. sum (indicative)
2. possum (subjunctive)

iii. Give the imperative forms, with translations, of the following verbs.

1. discō
2. adōrō
3. habēō
4. possum
5. audiō

iv. Make a noun chart and decline *everlasting light*.

v. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. Let us live.
2. Let them love.
3. They love.
4. We may hear the old man.
5. The old man hears the truth.
6. She is praising the master's wine.
7. Listen to (plural) my king!

8. The sun is setting.
9. Do you (singular) love another woman?
10. The wretched legions do not see the light.

The Present Passive of All Conjugations

Lecture 13

Catullus, Lesbia, life, death, love, and countless kisses—those were our topics in the last lecture, and we explored them all in the original Latin. In this lecture, our topic is almost as exciting: the present passive in the first, second, third *-io*, and fourth conjugations. We will first review the personal endings for Latin verbs in the passive voice and then walk through the conjugations of our model verbs. We'll close by parsing a quote from Genesis and the opening of a prayer to the emperor Tiberius.

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, active voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō / -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

Review: Personal endings for Latin verbs, passive voice

	Singular	Plural
1	-r	-mur
2	-ris	-minī
3	-tur	-ntur

Principal parts: *capiō*

- The principal parts of the verb *capiō* are *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*.
- The pattern in the first two principal parts is *-io* followed by short *-ere*; thus, the conjugation is third *-io*.

Review: Present active indicative conjugation of *capiō**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*: take, grab, seize

	Singular	Plural
1	capiō	capimus
2	capis	capitis
3	capit	capiunt

Present passive indicative conjugation of *capiō**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*: take, grab, seize

	Singular	Plural
1	capior	capimur
2	caperis	capiminī
3	capitur	capiuntur

Present passive subjunctive conjugation of *capiō**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*: take, grab, seize

	Singular	Plural
1	capiar	capiamur
2	capīaris	capiaminī
3	capīatur	capiantur

Passive imperative of *capiō*

capere (singular); capiminī (plural)

Passive infinitive of *capiō*

capī

Review: Verb stems

	1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.	3 rd -io Conj.	4 th Conj.
	amō, amāre	videō, vidēre	pōnō, pōnere	capiō, capere	sentiō, sentīre
Pattern	-ō, -āre	-eō, -ēre	-ō, -ere	-iō, -ere	-iō, -īre
Stem	amā-	vidē-	pōne-	cape-	sentī-
Theme Vowel	long ā	long ē	short ě	short ě	long ī

Present passive indicative conjugations

Present Passive Indicative				
1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.	3 rd -io Conj.	4 th Conj.
amor	videor	pōnor	capior	sentior
amāris	vidēris	pōneris	caperis	sentīris
amātur	vidētur	pōnitur	capitur	sentītur
amāmur	vidēmur	pōnimur	capimur	sentīmur
amāminī	vidēminī	pōniminī	capiminī	sentīminī
amantur	videntur	pōnuntur	capiuntur	sentiantur

Present passive subjunctive conjugations

Present Passive Subjunctive				
1 st Conj.	2 nd Conj.	3 rd Conj.	3 rd -io Conj.	4 th Conj.
amer	videar	pōnar	capiar	sentiar
amēris	videāris	pōnāris	capiāris	sentiāris
amētur	videātur	pōnātur	capiātur	sentiātur
amēmur	videāmur	pōnāmur	capiāmur	sentiāmur
amēminī	videāminī	pōnāminī	capiāminī	sentiāminī
amentur	videantur	pōnantur	capiantur	sentiantur

Parsing Genesis 1:9 and a prayer to Tiberius

- The first part of Genesis 1:9 reads, in “vulgar Latin,” as follows: *dixit vērō Deus: congregentur aquae ... in locum ūnum*. Parsing this quote, we arrive at the following translation: “In truth God said: let the waters be gathered together into one place!”
- Valerius Maximus opens his *Memorable Deeds and Sayings*, his *Facta et Dicta Memorabilia*, with a prayer to the Caesar whom we know as the Roman emperor Tiberius: *Tē, Caesar, invocō, cuius caelestī prōvidentiā virtūtēs ... benignissimē foventur, vitia sevērissimē vindicantur*.
 - The first phrase, *Tē, Caesar, invocō*, means, “I invoke you, O Caesar.” An ancient prayer always required invocation of the correct deity.
 - As a whole, the prayer can be translated as: “You, Caesar, I invoke, by whose heavenly foresight virtues are fostered most kindly; vices are punished most severely.”

Verba

aqua, aquae, f.: water

benignissimē, adv.: most kindly

caelestis, caeleste, third-declension adj.: heavenly

caelum, caelī, n.: sky, heaven

congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātum: gather together, assemble

deus, deī, m.: god

foveō, fovere, fōvī, fōtum: cherish, foster, nourish

imperātor, imperātōris, m.: commander, emperor

in (prep. + ablative): in, on

in (prep. + accusative): into

invocō, invocāre, invocāvī, invocātum: call upon, invoke

locus, locī, m.: place

multus, multa, multum: much, many

prōvidentia, prōvidentiae, f.: foresight, providence

sevērissimē, adv.: most severely

sub (prep. + ablative): under

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē (personal pronoun; App. §40): you (sing.)

ūnus, ūna, ūnum: one

vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātum: punish, avenge

vitium, vitii, n.: vice

Memoranda

Please learn the present passive indicative and subjunctive, present passive infinitive, and present passive imperatives of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

i. Conjugate the following verbs in the present tense, using the voice and mood indicated.

1. laudō (active indicative)
2. videō (passive subjunctive)
3. sentiō (passive indicative)
4. congregō (active subjunctive)
5. habeo (active indicative)
6. audiō (passive subjunctive)

ii. Please translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The girl loves one boy.
2. Many girls are loved by the boy.
3. Let the wretched maiden cease to love the beautiful boy.
4. Let the good old men be heard by Caesar.

5. Caesar is not heard by (his) soldiers.
6. The joyful farmers are assembling in the city.
7. Assemble, slaves!
8. We are being gathered together under the large elm tree.
9. Let the cities be guarded by the commander's legions.
10. Are you (singular) seen by the woman?
11. Do you (plural) see the other boy in the water?
12. Can the enemies be captured?
13. I cannot be heard by the students.
14. May the gods be praised!
15. The light of truth is not perceived by the king.

Third-Declension Adjectives

Lecture 14

In this lecture, we will revisit the third declension. We will review the endings for nouns and then turn our attention to third-declension adjectives, which are similar to, but not always exactly the same as, the endings for third-declension nouns. Compared to learning the third declension from scratch, what we face in this lecture is relatively small scale. As so often in Latin, there are patterns, and we'll identify those helpful patterns in this lecture.

Review: Third-declension masculine and feminine noun endings

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-ēs
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-e	-ibus

Review: Declension of *mīles* (third-declension masculine noun)

mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles	mīlitēs
Genitive	mīlitis	mīlitum
Dative	mīlitī	mīlitibus
Accusative	mīlitem	mīlitēs
Ablative	mīlite	mīlitibus

Review: Neuter endings for third-declension nouns

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-a
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	***	-a
Ablative	-e	-ibus

Review: Declension of *corpus* (third-declension neuter noun)

corpus, corporis, n.: body

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	corpus	corpora
Genitive	corporis	corporum
Dative	corporī	corporibus
Accusative	corpus	corpora
Ablative	corpore	corporibus

Comparison: Regular third-declension noun and adjective endings

	3 rd -Declension Masc. & Fem. Nouns	3 rd -Declension Masc. & Fem. Adjectives	3 rd -Declension Neuter Nouns	3 rd -Declension Neuter Adjectives
Singular				
Nominative	*	*	*	*
Genitive	-is	-is	-is	-is
Dative	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī
Accusative	-em	-em	*	*
Ablative	-e	-ī	-e	-ī
Plural				
Nominative	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ia
Genitive	-um	-ium	-um	-ium
Dative	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ia
Ablative	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

- If we compare third-declension noun and adjective endings case by case, we see that nouns and adjectives of the third declension have the same endings in the nominative singular, genitive singular, dative singular, and accusative singular.
- Third-declension nouns and adjectives differ in the ablative singular. Adjectives use long ī, rather than a short ě. In truth, however, this confused even the Romans a bit. They would sometimes slip and use ě in the ablative singular where they should have used an ī or an ī where they should have used an ě, especially in inscriptions.
- Masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension have the same endings as third-declension adjectives in the nominative and accusative plurals: -ēs.

- Neuter nouns have nominative and accusative plurals ending in *-a*, and neuter adjectives have nominative and accusative plurals ending in *-ia*.
- In the genitive plural, third-declension nouns have *-um* as their ending. Adjectives have *-ium*.
- The dative and ablative plurals are the same for all genders of both nouns and adjectives: *-ibus*.
- Apart from the ablative singular, we could easily translate all third-declension adjectives on sight, even if we didn't understand why stray *i*'s appeared here and there.

Quiz

For the following lexical entries, provide the declension. Remember, we know the declensions of nouns by their genitives.

1. *puer, puerī*, m., boy
2. *bellum, bellī*, n., war
3. *servus, servī*, m., slave
4. *vulnus, vulneris*, n., wound
5. *nox, noctis*, f., night
6. *puella, puellae*, f., girl
7. *poeta, poetae*, m., poet
8. *senex, senis*, m., old man

Answers: 1. genitive ends in *-ī*, second-declension masculine; 2. genitive ends in *-ī*, second-declension neuter; 3. genitive ends in *-ī*, second-declension masculine; 4. genitive ends in *-is*, third-declension neuter; 5. genitive ends

in *-is*, third-declension feminine; 6. genitive ends in *-ae*, first-declension feminine (the majority of first-declension nouns are feminine); 7. genitive ends in *-ae*, first-declension masculine (there are some first-declension masculine nouns; it is the genitive, not the gender, that dictates declension); 8. genitive ends in *-is*, third-declension masculine.

Declension of adjectives

- Adjectives appear in three genders because they need to be able to modify nouns of all three genders. How, then, do we recognize whether adjectives belong to the first and second declensions or to the third declension?
- If we see the endings *-a*, *-um*, the adjective is first and second declension. Consider the following examples:
 - **bonus, bona, bonum** (or, as it's more likely to appear in a dictionary: **bon•us, a, um, adj.**, good).
Here, we're supposed to know that we put the endings *-a* and *-um* on the stem *bon-* to create the feminine and neuter forms. Note again that these endings are all nominative. Dictionaries generally list adjectives exclusively in the nominative (with some exceptions).
 - **liber, -a, -um, adj.**, free
Sometimes, the masculine ends in *-r* rather than *-us* in the nominative. How would we say "the free girl"? *puella libera*. "The free body"? *corpus liberum*. "The free soldier"? *miles liber*. The giveaway is found in the endings *-a*, *-um*. Anytime we see three adjective endings concluding with *-a*, *-um*, the adjective will belong to the first and second declensions.
- Third-declension adjectives come in three varieties: with three endings, two endings, or one ending in the nominative singular. Indeed, the only place where third-declension adjectives sometimes differ from each other is in the nominative singular.

Third-declension adjectives, two endings (the most common variety)

facilis, facile: happy

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
Genitive	facilis	facilis	facilium	facilium
Dative	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
Accusative	facilem	facile	facilēs	facilia
Ablative	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus

Third-declension adjectives, three endings

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, fierce

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Genitive	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Accusative	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Ablative	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Third-declension adjectives, one ending

audāx, gen. *audācis*: bold

	Singular		Plural	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Genitive	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dative	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Accusative	audācem	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Ablative	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

- When we reflect on the patterns of third-declension adjectives, we can conclude that the problems, such as they may be, appear only in the nominative singular. Again, that is why we call the nominative “blank.” Once we get past that “blank,” the rest of the declension is quite regular.
- Apart from the mysteries of the nominative singular, third-declension adjectives are actually somewhat simpler than first- and second-declension adjectives. The endings are the same for all genders except in the nominative and accusative. Masculine and feminine nouns share the accusative singular ending *-em*, and the nominative and accusative plural share the ending *-ēs*. Neuters have no endings in particular in the nominative and accusative singular and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plurals.

Quiz

For the phrase “brief light,” provide the Latin in the case indicated.

- nominative: the brief light sets
- genitive: of the brief light
- dative: to or for the brief light

4. accusative: I glimpse the brief light.
5. ablative: by, with, or from the brief light

Answers: 1. *brevis lūx*, 2. *brevis lūcis*, 3. *brevī lūcī*, 4. *brevem lūcem*, 5. *brevī luce*.

For the phrase “brief lights,” provide the Latin in the case indicated.

1. nominative: the brief lights set
2. genitive: of the brief lights
3. dative: to or for the brief lights
4. accusative: I glimpse the brief lights.
5. ablative: by, with, or from the brief lights

Answers: 1. *brevēs luces*, 2. *brevium lūcum*, 3. *brevibus lūcibus*, 4. *brevēs luces*, 5. *brevibus lūcibus*.

For the phrase “strong body,” provide the Latin in the case indicated.

1. nominative singular: The strong body glistens.
2. genitive: of the strong body
3. dative: to or for the strong body
4. accusative: I glimpse the strong body.
5. ablative: by, with, or from the strong body

Answers: 1. *corpus forte*, 2. *corporis fortis*, 3. *corporī fortī*, 4. *corpus forte*, 5. *corpore fortī*.

For the phrase “strong bodies,” provide the Latin in the case indicated.

1. nominative: the strong bodies glisten
2. genitive: of the strong bodies
3. dative: to or for the strong bodies
4. accusative: I glimpse the strong bodies.
5. ablative: by, with, or from the strong bodies

Answers: 1. *corpora fortia*, 2. *corporum fortium*, 3. *corporibus fortibus*, 4. *corpora fortia*, 5. *corporibus fortibus*.

Verba

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, keen, fierce

audāx, gen. audācis: daring, bold

brevis, breve: brief, short

dolor, dolōris, m.: pain, grief

et ... et: both ... and

facilis, facile: easy, agreeable

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum: do, make, cause

fortis, forte: strong, brave

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitum: produce, beget, bring forth

lingua, linguae, f.: language, tongue

poēta, poētae, m.: poet

vir, virī, m.: man

vīta, vītae, f.: life

vulnus, vulneris, n.: wound

Memoranda

Please learn the third-declension adjective endings and the declension of ācer, ācris, ācre, “sharp” (which may be found in App. §26).

Agenda

i. Decline the following noun-adjective combinations.

1. daring poet
2. strong man
3. sharp wound

ii. Please translate the following phrases into Latin. (Sometimes you will need to use a preposition.)

1. of the easy language
2. to/for the fierce legions
3. under the beautiful sky
4. in great grief
5. by/with/from strong bodies
6. of the bold girls

7. short months (as subject)
8. by/with/from a strong mind
9. easy wars (direct object)
10. into the enemy's fierce city

iii. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. *Vulnus mīlitī dolōrem facit.*
2. *Virtūtem fēminārum fortium laudēmus.*
3. *Ē dolōribus ācribus discī potest vērītās.*
4. *Ācrēs mentēs habent linguae Latīnae discipulī et discipulae.*
5. *Lūce sōlis flōrēs pulchrī gignuntur.*
6. *Ācrī in bellō virī fortēs bonīque caeduntur.*
7. *In locum miserum congregantur servae dominī ācris.*
8. *Fortēs este, puerī et puellae!*
9. *Deum aeternum, nōn vītā brevem, colāmus.*
10. *Vērītātem vidēre facile nōn est.*

Third-Declension /-Stem Nouns

Lecture 15

In the last lecture, we looked at third-declension adjectives. This puts us in a good position for learning about another class of third-declension nouns: third-declension *i*-stems. Of course, we call them *i*-stems because the letter *i* appears in some forms where regular third-declension nouns don't have it. In fact, *i*-stem nouns look very much like third-declension adjectives. The question is: How can we tell which third-declension nouns are *i*-stems? We can't tell them apart by their genitives, but in this lecture, we'll learn the secrets of recognizing them.

Comparison: Endings of regular third-declension nouns, third-declension *i*-stem nouns, and third-declension adjectives

	3 rd . Declension M&F Nouns	3 rd . Declension M&F Adjectives	3 rd . Declension M&F <i>i</i> -stem Nouns	3 rd . Declension Neuter Nouns	3 rd . Declension Neuter Adjectives	3 rd . Declension Neuter <i>i</i> -stem Nouns
Singular						
Nominative	*	*	*	*	*	*
Genitive	-is	-is	-is	-is	-is	-is
Dative	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī
Accusative	-em	-em	-em	*	*	*
Ablative	-e	-ī	-e	-e	-ī	-ī
Plural						
Nominative	-ēs	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ia	-ia
Genitive	-um	-ium	-ium	-um	-ium	-ium
Dative	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative	-ēs	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ia	-ia
Ablative	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

- The nominative case is a blank in the singular. We can't predict the nominative ending of a third-declension noun or third-declension adjective.
- The genitive case, in contrast, is completely regular in the singular. We find the ending *-īs* across the board. The dative singular is likewise completely regular; we find *-ī* across the board.
- The accusative singular, too, is completely regular. For masculine and feminine nouns and adjectives, the ending is *-em*. For neuter nouns and adjectives, the accusative is the same as the nominative.
- In the ablative singular, we find either a short *-ē* or a long *-ī*. All third-declension masculine and feminine nouns, including *i*-stem nouns, have an *e* in the ablative singular. Regular third-declension neuter nouns also have an *e* in the ablative singular. Third-declension adjectives, however, and third-declension *i*-stem neuter nouns have an *ī* in the ablative singular.
- The points to remember here are that adjectives and neuter *i*-stem nouns have an *ī* in the ablative singular. In all other respects, regular third-declension nouns, *i*-stem nouns, and third-declension adjectives have identical endings in the singular.
- In the plural, masculine and feminine nouns and adjectives all show *-ēs* in the nominative and accusative plurals. Dative and ablative plurals all end in *-ibus*.
- We find an *i* in front of the *a* for neuter plural adjectives and an *i* in front of the *a* for neuter plural nominatives and accusative *i*-stem nouns. We also find an *i* in front of the *u* in the genitive plural ending *-um* for third-declension adjectives, and we find an *i* in front of the *-um* for all *i*-stem nouns, whether masculine, feminine, or neuter.
- To summarize, masculine and feminine third-declension *i*-stem nouns insert an *i* in front of the *u* of the genitive plural *-um*. That

is the only difference between a regular third-declension noun and an *i*-stem noun of the third declension, at least for masculine and feminine nouns. Neuter nouns of the third declension look like third-declension neuter adjectives. They insert an *i* in the ablative singular, as well as an additional *i* in front of the *a* in the nominative plural, an *i* in front of the *-um* of the genitive plural, and an *i* in front of the *-a* of the accusative plural.

Recognizing *i*-stem nouns

- How can we tell whether a noun belongs to the regular third declension or to the *i*-stem declension? Neuter *i*-stem nouns are easy to identify. If the nominative singular of a third-declension neuter noun ends in *e*, *al*, or *ar*, it is an *i*-stem. Examples include *animal*, *animalis*, “animal”; *exemplar*, *exemplāris*, “example”; and *mare*, *maris*, “sea.”
- Below is a sample declension of *animal*, an *i*-stem neuter noun.

animal, *animalis*, *n.*: *animal*

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	animal	animālia
Genitive	animālis	animālium
Dative	animālī	animālibus
Accusative	animal	animālia
Ablative	animālī	animālibus

- The first clue to recognizing masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension *i*-stem is an *-is* or *-es* in the nominative singular, but another condition must also be satisfied. The masculine or feminine noun whose nominative ends in *-is* or *-es* must also have the same number of syllables in the genitive as it does in the nominative. Only then will the noun be a third-declension *i*-stem. Consider these examples:

- *auris, auris*, f., ear
- *hostis, hostis*, m., enemy
- *nāvis, nāvis*, f., ship
- *nūbēs, nūbis*, f., cloud
- All these nouns belong to the third declension because they have a genitive ending in *-is*. They are also *i*-stems because they have *-is* or *-es* in the nominative singular, they have the same number of syllables in the genitive singular, and are masculine or feminine. Where do we find the *i* of the *i*-stem? In the genitive plural. Other than the genitive plural, all the other forms of masculine and feminine *i*-stems look exactly like their regular third-declension counterparts.
- There is one other type of third-declension masculine and feminine *i*-stem noun: third-declension nouns that have one syllable in the nominative singular and end in the letter *s* or *x* and have a stem ending in two consonants in the genitive singular. Consider these examples:
 - *ars, artis*, f., skill
 - *dens, dentis*, m., tooth
 - *nox, noctis*, f., night
 - *urbs, urbis*, f., city
- All of these masculine and feminine nouns are monosyllabic in the nominative, which also ends in *s* or *x*. And all of them have a base in the genitive that ends in two consonants. Again, the genitive plural is the only place where a masculine or feminine *i*-stem differs from a regular third-declension noun.

- Are all monosyllabic nominatives that end in *s* or *x* and belong to the third declension also *i*-stems? Consider these two words:
 - *pax, pācis*, f., peace
 - *rēx, rēgis*, m., king
- Both words have *x* in the nominative singular, and both are monosyllables in the nominative singular. But let's look at the stems. The stem of *pācis* is *pāc-* and the stem of *rēgis* is *rēg-*. These stems end in one, not two, consonants, so they are not *i*-stems but regular third-declension nouns.

Parsing Cato the Elder

- The elder Cato (234–149 B.C.E.) is famous for his advocacy of conservative Roman values and his denunciation of Greek literature and philosophy, which he considered degenerate.
 - His historical works survive only in a few fragments, but we do have his handbook on farming, *Dē Agrī cultūrā*, which is full of advice on how to run a farm, the only fit occupation, in Cato's opinion, for an honest Roman man. Cato tells us: *Ex agricolīs et virī fortissimī et mīlitēs strenuissimī gignuntur*.
 - Parsing this sentence, we find: "From farmers both the bravest men and the most vigorous soldiers are produced."
- Elsewhere in his handbook, Cato advocates taking care of the livestock: *bovēs maximā dīligentiā curāte*, meaning "Take care of the cows with the greatest diligence!"
- Another gem from Cato's *Dē Agrīcultūrā* is this: *plostrum vetus, ferrementa vetera, servum senem, servum morbōsum ... vendat pater familiās*, meaning "Let the head of household sell an old plow, old tools, an old slave, and the sick slave."

Verba

animal, animālis, n.: animal

ars, artis, f.: art, skill

auris, auris, f.: ear

dēns, dentis, m.: tooth

exemplar, exemplāris, n.: example

mare, maris, n.: sea

nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship

nūbēs, nūbis, f.: cloud

pāx, pācis, f.: peace (not an *i*-stem)

vōx, vōcis, f.: voice (not an *i*-stem)

Memoranda

Please learn the third-declension *i*-stem noun endings and the declensions of *hostis*, *hostis*, m., “enemy” (App. §19) and *animal*, *animālis*, n., “animal” (App. §19).

Agenda

i. Decline the following noun-adjective combinations.

1. great sea
2. large city

ii. Please translate the following sentences into English.

1. Pācem cupiunt fēminae urbis.
2. Hostēs nāvibus trāns (across) mare veniunt, ut bellum magnum agant.
3. Vēritās sentīrī ā virīs miserīs nōn potest.
4. In silvā (forest) sunt animālia ācria, sed nocte ā mīlite Caesaris custōdior.
5. Dolōrem noctium perpetuārum vincāmus!
6. Rūmōrēs ā rēge bonō nōn audiuntur.

iii. Translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. The great poet is praising the skill of the young woman.
2. Let him cease to wage war, and let us live in peace joyfully. (Rather than use an adverb, Latin will make *laetus* agree with the subject of the verb.)
3. Many animals are being sold by the other farmer.
4. The old man cannot hear the master's voice.
5. The slaves are being gathered together in large ships by the commander of the legions.

The Relative Pronoun

Lecture 16

In the last lecture, we looked at third-declension *i*-stems, which did not require us to memorize much in the way of new forms. In this lecture, we will exercise our memories a bit more, but the strain won't be too great. The declension of the relative pronoun combines elements of the first, second, and third declensions, as well as its own forms; thus, we treat it separately. In this lecture, we'll learn to identify relative pronouns, and we'll work on translating some sample sentences from the historian Sallust.

Identifying relative pronouns

- A pronoun takes the place of a noun. *Prō*, in Latin, is a preposition meaning “on behalf of.” Thus, a *pronoun* serves “on behalf of a noun.” A relative pronoun takes the place of a noun and relates one clause to another.
- Consider these two sentences: Caesar wages war. He is in Gaul. In the second sentence, the pronoun *he* served to take the place of the proper noun *Caesar*.
- Now consider another sentence: Caesar, who is in Gaul, wages war. This sentence has two clauses: a main clause, “Caesar wages war,” and a subordinate clause, “who is in Gaul.” Subordinate clauses generally cannot stand on their own as independent sentences. But the advantage of having such clauses is that they can provide nuance and further information about the main clause and signal that this information is subordinate to the main thought.
- We use subordination in English all the time, but we're not consistent in our use of relative pronouns. Consider the following examples, all of which are perfectly intelligible although not all are technically correct:
 - The girl, who you see on the corner, is my daughter.

- The girl, whom you see on the corner, is my daughter.
- The girl that you see on the corner is my daughter.
- The girl you see on the corner is my daughter.
- The girl, which you see on the corner, is my daughter.
- In other words, in English, we have, in reference to people, an array of possible relative pronouns, some better than others but all intelligible: who, that, which, or nothing at all. In reference to things, we simply eliminate *who* as a possibility.

The relative pronoun in Latin

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Translation
Singular				
Nominative	quī	quae	quod	who, which, that (masc. & fem.); which, that (neuter)
Genitive	cuius	cuius	cuius	whose, of which
Dative	cui	cui	cui	to <i>or</i> for whom; to <i>or</i> for which
Accusative	quem	quam	quod	whom, which, that
Ablative	quō	quā	quō	by, with, <i>or</i> from whom; by, with, <i>or</i> from which
Plural				
Nominative	quī	quae	quae	who, which, that (masc. & fem.); which, that (neuter)
Genitive	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	whose, of which
Dative	quibus	quibus	quibus	to <i>or</i> for whom; to <i>or</i> for which
Accusative	quōs	quās	quae	whom, which, that
Ablative	quibus	quibus	quibus	by, with, <i>or</i> from whom; by, with, <i>or</i> from which

Note: The translations remain the same in the plural and the singular. In English, we can't make the relative pronoun plural, but plural forms exist in Latin.

Translating Sallust

- The historian Sallust was born in 86 B.C.E. and was a partisan of Julius Caesar. One of his surviving works describes a conspiracy that was suppressed during the consulship of Cicero in 63 B.C.E. The work is interesting for many reasons, but one of them is that Sallust gives Cicero, who considered himself the hero of the story, such a small role. Instead, in Sallust's account, Julius Caesar and his nemesis, the younger Cato, emerge as the two pole stars of a politically divided society. Sallust's portrait of the conspirator Catiline is also compelling.
 - In the following sentence, Sallust describes Aurelia Orestilla: *Catīlīna amat Aurēliam Orestillam, cuius praeter fōrmam nihil umquam bonus laudat*. Catiline allegedly murdered his first wife and son so that he could marry Aurelia, and the relative pronoun helps us understand why.
 - The sentence translates literally as: "Catiline loves Aurelia Orestilla, of whom except for the beauty not at all ever a good person praises." In more readable English, the last phrase reads: "except for whose beauty a good person never praises."
 - The sentence captures some of Sallust's pithiness. What he's saying is that Aurelia was good-looking but morally bankrupt. A good person could say nothing good about her character but, when speaking truthfully, could praise her good looks.
- Here's a more straightforward example from Sallust: *Coniūrant paucī contrā rem pūblicam, in quibus Catīlīna est*. In English, it reads: "A few people conspire against the Republic, among whom Catiline is," or "A few people conspire against the Republic, among whom is Catiline."

- Note that relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in number and gender, but their case depends on their use in their own clause.
 - Returning to our first sentence, Aurelia Orestilla is in the accusative feminine singular because she is the direct object of the verb *loves*.
 - The relative pronoun *cuius*, however, is in the genitive because it shows possession of the *fōrmam* (“beauty”). The relative pronoun *cuius* is in the feminine singular because it refers back to Aurelia Orestilla, but unlike accusative Aurelia Orestilla, *cuius* is in the genitive to show possession.
 - All words, including the relative pronoun, take their case from their use in their own clauses, but pronouns can refer to other words in a sentence through their gender and number.

Verba

ager, agrī, m.: field

coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum: conspire

contrā (prep. + accusative): against

dē (prep. + ablative): about, concerning, from

dō, dare, dedī, datum: give, offer

filia, filiae, f.: daughter (the dative and ablative plural are *filiabus* to distinguish the forms from the dative/ablative *filiis*, for “sons”)

filius, filiī, m.: son

fōrma, fōrmae, f.: form, shape, beauty

immortālis, immortalē (adj.): immortal

ita (adv.): so, thus

māter, mātris, f.: mother

nihil: nothing, not at all

pater, patris, m.: father

pauca, paucae, pauci (plural adj.): few, a few

praeter (prep. + accusative): besides, except, beyond

qui, quae, quod (relative pronoun): who, which, that

rēs publica: republic, state

umquam (adv.): ever

Memoranda

Please learn the declension of the relative pronoun *qui, quae, quod*, “who, which, that” (App. §46).

Agenda

- i. Create a chart and decline the relative pronoun.
- ii. Please translate the following sentences into English.
 1. Puella quae puerum pulchrum amat laeta est.
 2. Senex cui cibum damus miser est.
 3. Hostēs contrā quōs pugnāmus ācrēs sunt.
 4. Ager in quō congregant poētae magnus est.

5. Vir cuius fīliam laudās, agricola, sevērus est.
6. Est pater puerī quem adōrō.
7. Urbem in quā vīvimus custōdiunt legiōnēs.
8. Colīsne deōs immortālēs dē quibus pontifex maximus vērītatem dīcit?
9. Aeterna est vērītās quam sentīmus.
10. Multōs imperātor dūcit, in quibus est fīlius meus.

iii. Please translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. Can you (plural) see the star that I see?
2. We hear soldiers of the fierce king by whom the beautiful city is being conquered.
3. The courage of the maidens whom they praise is great.
4. The wine that you (singular) are drinking is most pleasing.
5. The farmer, by whose mother we are being praised, loves his son but he does not have a daughter.

The Imperfect and Future Tenses

Lecture 17

In the last two lectures, we have concentrated on declensions, *i*-stems, and relative pronouns. In this lecture, we'll return to where the action is—to verbs; we will break free of the present tense and look at both the future and the past. Specifically, we'll learn to conjugate and translate the future and imperfect tenses. We've already mastered the present tense in Latin, which is the most challenging; it has four conjugations plus the third *-io*, for a total of five present-tense patterns. The good news is that for the future tense, we have only two patterns to learn, and for the imperfect tense, only one.

The future tense

- The future tense may be translated “I shall verb,” “I will verb,” or “I am going to verb.” In this lesson, we learn the indicative forms of the future. There are no subjunctive forms for the future tense in Latin.

Active endings for future-tense third-conjugation, third *-io*, and fourth-conjugation verbs

	Singular	Plural
1	-am	-ēmus
2	-ēs	-ētis
3	-et	-ent

Passive endings for future-tense third-conjugation, third *-io*, and fourth-conjugation verbs

	Singular	Plural
1	-ar	-ēmur
2	-ēris	-ēminī
3	-ētur	-entur

- To form the future of third-, third *-io*, and fourth-conjugation verbs, we remove the *ō* from the first principal part and attach the future endings, whether active or passive, to this base.
- Again, the key here is conjugation identification. These endings work only for third-, third *-io*, and fourth-conjugation verbs. We need to know whether a verb belongs to the first, second, third, third *-io*, or fourth conjugation if we want to know what is signified by an *-a*, *-i*, or *-e*.

Future active indicative of third-conjugation *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnam	pōnēmus
2	pōnēs	pōnētis
3	pōnet	pōnent

Future passive indicative of third-conjugation *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnar	pōnēmur
2	pōnēris	pōnēminī
3	pōnētur	pōnentur

Comparison of third- and fourth-conjugation model verbs in the future active and passive

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: seize, capture

sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum: feel, perceive

Future active indicative conjugation of *capiō* and *sentīō*

	Third -io	Fourth Conjugation
Singular		
1	capiam	sentiam
2	capiēs	sentiēs
3	capiet	sentiet
Plural		
1	capiēmus	sentiēmus
2	capiētis	sentiētis
3	capiant	sentiant

Future passive indicative conjugation of *capiō* and *sentiō*

	Third -io	Fourth Conjugation
Singular		
1	capiar	sentiar
2	capiēris	sentiēris
3	capiētur	sentiētur
Plural		
1	capiēmur	sentiēmur
2	capiēminī	sentiēminī
3	capiuntur	sentiuntur

Active endings for future-tense first- and second-conjugation verbs

	Singular	Plural
1	-bō	-bimus
2	-bis	-bitis
3	-bit	-bunt

Passive endings for future-tense first- and second-conjugation verbs

	Singular	Plural
1	-bor	-bimur
2	-beris	-biminī
3	-bitur	-buntur

- To form the future of first and second conjugation verbs, we attach the future endings, whether active or passive, to the verb stem, which we obtain by removing the *-re* from the second principal part. This explains why either a long *ā* (first conjugation) or a long *ē* (second conjugation) appears before the *b* of the first- and second-conjugation future endings.
- As always, the key is conjugation identification. These future endings work only for first- and second-conjugation verbs.

Future active indicative conjugation of first-conjugation *amō*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

	Singular	Plural
1	amābō	amābimus
2	amābis	amābitis
3	amābit	amābunt

Future passive indicative conjugation of first-conjugation *amō*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

	Singular	Plural
1	amābor	amābimur
2	amāberis	amābiminī
3	amābitur	amābuntur

Future active indicative conjugation of second-conjugation *videō**videō, vidēre, vīsī, vīsum*: see

	Singular	Plural
1	vidēbō	vidēbimus
2	vidēbis	vidēbitis
3	vidēbit	vidēbunt

Future passive indicative conjugation of second-conjugation *videō**videō, vidēre, vīsī, vīsum*: see

	Singular	Plural
1	vidēbor	vidēbimur
2	vidēberis	vidēbiminī
3	vidēbitur	vidēbuntur

The imperfect tense

- With the imperfect, we complete our overview of the entire present-tense system, which we define as the tenses based on the first two principal parts of the verb. The present-tense system includes the present, the future, and the imperfect.
- To form the imperfect tense, we need just one set of endings for all four conjugations in the indicative and, for the subjunctive, just one simple rule that works for all the conjugations.
- Let's start with the imperfect subjunctive, which can be translated as "I might" plus a verb. To form the imperfect subjunctive of any regular Latin verb, simply add the personal endings, whether active or passive, to the second principal part.

Imperfect active subjunctive of first-conjugation *amō*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

	Singular	Plural
1	amārem	amārēmus
2	amārēs	amārētis
3	amāret	amārent

Imperfect active subjunctive of third-conjugation *capiō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: seize, capture

	Singular	Plural
1	caperem	caperēmus
2	caperēs	caperētis
3	caperet	caperent

Imperfect passive subjunctive of fourth-conjugation *sentīō*

sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus: feel, perceive

	Singular	Plural
1	sentīrer	sentīrēmur
2	sentīrēris	sentīrēminī
3	sentīrētur	sentīrentur

The imperfect indicative

- The imperfect tense is used to represent actions in the past that have not yet been completed, are ongoing in the past, are customarily done in the past, or are repeated in the past. In other words, the tense is called “imperfect” because it is used to describe incomplete, customary, or repeated action—in the past.
- In English, we translate the imperfect indicative as “I verbed,” “I was verbing,” or “I used to verb.”

Active endings for the imperfect indicative

	Singular	Plural
1	-bam	-bāmus
2	-bās	-bātis
3	-bat	-bant

Passive endings for the imperfect indicative

	Singular	Plural
1	-bar	-bāmur
2	-bāris	-bāminī
3	-bātur	-bantur

- To form the imperfect indicative tense of first-conjugation verbs, remove the *ō* from the first principal part and attach the imperfect indicative endings to this base, inserting a long *ā* before the *b* of the imperfect endings.
- To form the imperfect indicative tense of second-conjugation verbs, remove the *eō* from the first principal part and attach the imperfect indicative endings to this base, inserting a long *ē* before the *b* of the imperfect endings.
- To form the imperfect indicative tense of third-, third -*iō*, and fourth-conjugation verbs, remove the *ō* from the first principal part and attach the imperfect indicative endings to this base, inserting a long *ē* before the *b* of the imperfect endings.

Imperfect active indicative of first-conjugation *amō*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

	Singular	Plural
1	amābam	amābāmus
2	amābās	amābātis
3	amābat	amābant

Imperfect active indicative of second-conjugation *videō*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see

	Singular	Plural
1	vidēbam	vidēbāmus
2	vidēbās	vidēbātis
3	vidēbat	vidēbant

Imperfect active indicative of third-conjugation *pōnō*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus
2	pōnēbās	pōnēbātis
3	pōnēbat	pōnēbant

Imperfect active indicative of third -iō conjugation *capiō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: seize, capture

	Singular	Plural
1	capiēbam	capiēbāmus
2	capiēbās	capiēbātis
3	capiēbat	capiēbant

Imperfect active indicative of fourth-conjugation *sentiō*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum: feel, perceive

	Singular	Plural
1	sentiēbam	sentiēbāmus
2	sentiēbās	sentiēbātis
3	sentiēbat	sentiēbant

Imperfect passive indicative of fourth-conjugation *sentiō*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum: feel, perceive

	Singular	Plural
1	sentiēbar	sentiēbāmur
2	sentiēbāris	sentiēbāminī
3	sentiēbātūr	sentiēbantūr

Basic patterns to remember

- In the future, there are two basic patterns. The third and fourth conjugations use *a/e* before the personal endings, active or passive. The first and second conjugations use *bo/bi/bu* before the personal endings, active or passive.
- The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the personal endings, either active or passive, directly to the second principal part.
- The imperfect indicative adds the personal endings to the imperfect marker *bā*, which is then attached to the first principal part minus its *ō* and with an intervening *ā* for the first conjugation or *ē* for the others.

Verba

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrum: grieve, suffer, hurt

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum: understand

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum: remain, stay, abide

requirō, requirere, requisīvī, requisītum: seek, ask for, miss, need, require

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum: ask, ask for

Memoranda

Please learn the third-, third *-io*, and fourth-conjugation future active endings; the first- and second-conjugation future active endings; and the

imperfect active indicative endings and familiarize yourself with their passive counterparts. Learn the rules for forming the imperfect subjunctive for all conjugations.

Agenda

- i. Learn the conjugation of the future tense (active and passive), imperfect indicative (active and passive), and the imperfect subjunctive (active and passive) of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).
- ii. Please conjugate the following verbs in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.
 1. *rogō* (imperfect, active, indicative)
 2. *intellegō* (future, passive, indicative)
 3. *requirō* (future, active, indicative)
 4. *dēcipiō* (imperfect, passive, indicative)
 5. *maneō* (future, active, indicative)
 6. *laudō* (future, passive, indicative)
 7. *cupiō* (imperfect, active, indicative)
 8. *doleō* (imperfect, active, subjunctive)
 9. *intellegō* (imperfect, passive, subjunctive)

- ii. Translate the following into Latin. (Each answer will be only one word.)
1. I was staying.
 2. You (singular) will be missed.
 3. They used to ask.
 4. She will be understood.
 5. You (plural) were grieving.
 6. We might grieve.
 7. He worshipped.
 8. It was being worshipped.
 9. You (singular) will be worshipped.
 10. We used to protect.
 11. They will drink.
 12. I will have.
 13. He used to have.
 14. They will be deceived.
 15. She might eat.
 16. Were you (plural) fleeing?
 17. Is she going to learn?
 18. It might cease.
 19. They will give.
 20. It was being sold.

Building Translation Skills

Lecture 18

In the last lecture, we covered the future and imperfect tenses, active and passive, all four conjugations, and in addition to the indicative, even the subjunctive for the imperfect. In this lecture, we will reap the rewards of this hard work. We will do a bit of review and practice these new tenses by translating some passages from Latin authors and more “modern” Latin: a sentence from the 13th-century Magna Carta.

Practicing with Catullus

- In one of his poems, Catullus uses the future tense to put his love for Lesbia behind him: *Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat, / nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam. / at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nulla.*
- Our translation reads: “Good-bye, girl, now Catullus is being strong / nor will he need you nor will he ask unwilling you. / But you, you will suffer, whenever you will not be asked for, whenever you will not be sought out.”

requirō, requirere, requisivī, requisitum: demand, seek after

Active Indicative		
	Present	Future
Singular	requirō	requiram
	requiris	requirēs
	requirit	requiret
Plural	requirimus	requirēmus
	requiritis	requirētis
	requirunt	requirent

Present passive indicative

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum: ask

	Singular	Plural
1	rogābor	rogābimur
2	rogāberis	rogābiminī
3	rogābitur	rogābuntur

Practicing with Caesar

- In a passage from Caesar, the general claimed to invade Gaul partly in an effort to protect Rome from the Germans. In this sentence, Caesar tells what he was thinking about the people who were the neighbors of the Gauls, the Germans, who in turn, were the neighbors of his province in northern Italy: *[Caesar] intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum [esse], ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populū Rōmānī inimicōs, ... finitimōs habēret.*
- Our translation reads: “Caesar understood that there would be great danger for the province, with the result that it, the province, would have warlike people, enemies of the Roman people, as neighbors.”



© Getty Images/Photos.com/Thinkstock

Practicing with other Latin sources

- Here's an authentic medieval Latin sentence from the 13th clause of the Magna Carta pertaining to the *cīvitās* (“city”) of London: *Et cīvitās London: habeat*

The Magna Carta, the “Great Charter” granting English liberties, was written in Latin and signed by King John in 1215.

omnēs antīquās libertātēs. Translated, the sentence reads: “And the city of London: let it have all antique liberties,” that is, all its ancient freedoms.

- The *Distichs*, or couplets, of Dionysius Cato, who lived in the 3rd or 4th century A.D., were popular in the Middle Ages and, in fact, remained popular even in Ben Franklin’s day. Here’s a sample: *Nē timeās illam, quae vītae est ultima fīnis: / Quī mortem metuit, āmittit gaudia vītae*. Translated, Cato’s advice reads: “Do not fear that which is life’s final end: / He who fears death, misses the joys of life.”
- Dionysius Cato also gives us this distich on the wisdom of learning: *Disce aliquid; nam cum subitō fortuna recēdit / Ars remānet vītamque hominis nōn dēserit umquam*, meaning “Learn something, for whenever good fortune suddenly departs, skill remains, and skill does not desert the life of a person ever.”

Verba

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsi, āmissum: lose, let go; miss

bellicōsus, bellicōsa, bellicōsum: warlike, relating to war, military

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.: state, city

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, desertum: desert, abandon

ego, meī (personal pronoun; cf. App. §40): I, me

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum: to do, make, bring forth

fīnis, fīnis, m. or f.: end, limit, purpose

fīnitimus, fīnitima, fīnitimum: neighboring, adjoining (used substantively as noun = neighbor)

gaudium, gaudī, n.: joy, delight

homō, hominis: human being, person, man

iam (adv.): now, already, soon

inimīcus, inimīcī, m.: enemy

invītus, invīta, invītum: unwilling

mors, mortis, f.: death

nec (conj.): and not, nor

numquam (adv.): never

obdūrō, obdūrāre, obdūrāvī, obdūrātum: be hard, be unfeeling;
endure, persist

perīculum, perīculī, n.: danger, risk

populus, populī, m.: people, nation

prōvincia, prōvinciae, f.: province

recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessum: depart, go away

timeō, timēre, timuī: fear, be afraid of

tū, tuī (personal pronoun; cf. App. §40): you

ultimus, ultima, ultimum: last, final; extreme

Memoranda

Please review the present, imperfect, and future tenses, both active and passive, of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

i. Conjugate the following verbs in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.

1. recēdō (future active indicative)
2. obdūrō (imperfect active subjunctive)
3. āmittō (imperfect passive indicative)

ii. Decline *warlike state*.

iii. Please translate the following sentences.

1. Fīnem vītae ultimam nōn timēbimus.
2. Dēseretne puella agricolam pulchrum quem iam amābat?
3. Magnā cum virtūte mīlitēs Rōmānī contrā inimicōs bellicōsōs pugnābant.
4. Tū cum filiā in cīvitāte manēbis, sed in prōvinciam fīnitimam recēdam ego.
5. Quī mortem timet, gaudium vītae āmittit.
6. Tē numquam dēseret ars linguae Latīnae.
7. Puerum invītum nōn requīram atque dolēbit cum nōn requīrētur.

8. Obdurāte! Perīculum est magnum et paucae sumus, sed cīvitātem custōdīre poterimus.
9. Mēns rēgis bellicōsa dolōrem in populō gignet.
10. Bellum laudāre dēsināmus vīvāmusque et in pāce et magnō cum gaudiō.

Using the Subjunctive Mood

Lecture 19

In the last lecture, we read passages that featured the future and imperfect tenses. In this lecture, rather than drill new forms, we will continue to review the forms we have covered so far and to expand our knowledge of Latin syntax. We will explore the ways in which Latin forms indicate the grammatical relationships of words to one another in statements. For this exploration, we'll use some verses from Proverbs in Jerome's Latin translation of the Bible, known as the Vulgate.

Practicing with Jerome

- In Proverbs 1:7, we are told that wisdom begins in fear of authority and that idiots look down on learning. In Latin, the first part of this verse reads: *Timor Domini prīncipium scientiae*; in English: "Fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge."

timor, timōris, m.: fear

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	timor	timōrēs
Genitive	timōris	timōrum
Dative	timōrī	timōribus
Accusative	timōrem	timōrēs
Ablative	timōre	timōribus

dominus, dominī, m.: master

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	dominus	dominī
Genitive	dominī	dominōrum
Dative	dominō	dominīs
Accusative	dominum	dominōs
Ablative	dominō	dominīs

prīncipium, prīncipiū, n.: beginning

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	prīncipium	prīncipia
Genitive	prīncipiū	prīncipiōrum
Dative	prīncipiō	prīncipiīs
Accusative	prīncipium	prīncipia
Ablative	prīncipiō	prīncipiīs

scientia, scientiae, f.: knowledge

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	scientia	scientiae
Genitive	scientiae	scientiārum
Dative	scientiae	scientiīs
Accusative	scientiam	scientiās
Ablative	scientiā	scientiīs

- Why is *scientiae* genitive in our quote? Does the beginning belong to the knowledge? Yes, the genitive shows possession.
- But what about *dominī*, which is also genitive? Does “fear of the Lord” mean that the Lord possesses fear? The answer is no.
 - Although we can understand what “fear of the Lord” means without being able to explain what kind of genitive it is, this is a useful example for pointing out that there are different kinds of genitives, even if we can translate more than one type with “of.”
 - “Fear of the Lord” is an objective genitive. Fear, although a noun, expresses a verbal idea. If I were to say “I fear the Lord,” Lord would be the direct object of the verb “I fear.” When we turn the verb *fear* into the noun *fear*, we put the object of our fear in the genitive.
- The next part of the verse is: *Sapientiam atque doctrinam stultī dēspiciunt*. In English: “Idiots look down on wisdom and learning.”

dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspēxī, dēspectum: **despise**

Active Indicative			
	Present	Future	Imperfect
Singular	dēspiciō	dēspiciam	dēspiciēbam
	dēspicis	dēspiciēs	dēspiciēbās
	dēspicit	dēspiciet	dēspiciēbat
Plural	dēspicimus	dēspiciēmus	dēspiciēbāmus
	dēspicitis	dēspiciētis	dēspiciēbātis
	dēspiciunt	dēspicient	dēspiciēbant

Quiz

Provide the Latin equivalent of the verb *despise*, in the correct tense, in the following three English sentences.

1. Stupid people despise wisdom.
2. Smart people will despise stupidity.
3. The conspirators despised Caesar.

Answers: 1. *dēspiciunt*, 2. *dēspicient*, 3. *dēspiciēbant*.

More from Proverbs

- In Proverbs 1:8, Solomon says: *Audī, fili mī, disciplīnam patris tuī et nē dīmīttās lēgem mātris tuae* ... In English, we read: “Hear, my son, the instruction of your father and do not forsake the law of your mother ...”
- The sentence concludes in verse 9: *ut addātur grātia capiti tuō, et torquēs collō tuō*, meaning, “so that charm may be added to your head and a collar to your neck.” Perhaps that collar keeps us on the path of virtue.

Verba

addō, addere, addidī, additum: put or place upon, add

caput, capitis, n.: head

collum, collī, n.: neck

dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspēxī, dēspectum: despise, look down on

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum: send away, dismiss, abandon

disciplīna, disciplīnae, f.: teaching, instruction

doctrīna, doctrīnae, f.: teaching, learning

grātia, grātiaē, f.: favor, charm, grace

lēx, lēgis, f.: law

prīncipium, prīncipiī, n.: beginning

sapientia, sapientiae, f.: wisdom

scientia, scientiae, f.: knowledge, science

stultus, stulta, stultum: foolish, stupid

timor, timōris, m.: fear

tuus, tua, tuum: your, yours (singular)

Memoranda

Please review the declensions of first-, second-, and third-declension nouns (App. §§14–19) and adjectives (App. §§23 and 25–28), as well as the present, imperfect, and future tenses, both active and passive, of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

- i. Decline *your law*.
- ii. Conjugate the following verbs in the present tense of the voice and mood indicated.
 1. dīmittō (indicative passive)
 2. dēspiciō (subjunctive passive)
- iii. Please translate the following sentences into English.
 1. Potestne stultus bene vīvere?
 2. Laudētur patris doctīna quae est grātia tua.
 3. Linguam Latīnam discipulae discunt, ut scientiam bonam habeant.
 4. Ne timōrem habeās, mea filia!
 5. Stultī filiī dīmittunt sapientiam mātris bonae.
 6. Paucās lēgēs dat rēx quī vincere cupit.
 7. Virum dēcipere facile est quī vērītatem dēspiciat.
 8. Hostēs in urbe tuā congregant, ut contrā rem pūblicam coniūrent.
 9. Puellārum capitibus flōrēs pulchrī adduntur.
 10. In disciplīnā dominī vidēmus fōrmam Deī.

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

Lecture 20

In the last two lectures, we have been practicing our forms and expanding our syntactical range. In this lecture, we'll return to declining, but instead of declining nouns, we'll decline a special class of words that can, when they serve as adjectives, help point to nouns. These words are called demonstrative adjectives; examples in English include *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those*.

Demonstrative adjectives in Latin

- Latin has the flexibility to change adjectives into nouns. This is known as the “substantive use of the adjective” because it changes a descriptor into a thing. In Latin, a speaker can point at someone and say, “this man,” but the speaker can then use “this” alone in subsequent references to the man.
- With two major exceptions, the declension of demonstrative adjectives and pronouns more or less follows the declensions of first- and second-declension adjectives. Those exceptions can be summarized as genitive singular ending in *-ius* and dative singular ending in *-ī*. If you can remember those rules, you can decline demonstrative adjectives and pronouns.
- We'll begin by looking at the three most basic demonstrative adjectives and then look at a longer list of similar words that decline in the same way. If you master the forms of the shorter list, you can treat the longer list as vocabulary items, making a mental note to use the shorter list as your paradigm for declining them.

***ille*, that, those (something more remote from the speaker)**

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

***hic*, this, these (near the speaker)**

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

***is*, this, that, he, she, it, these, those, they (unemphatic)**

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs	eīs	eīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs	eīs	eīs

Other demonstrative adjectives

- There are other demonstrative adjectives that decline like these or much like these. For example, *iste, ista, istud* means something akin to “that one of yours” and is often used disparagingly, as in: “Which horse?” *Iste equus*, “that old horse of yours!”
- *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum* is a rather important intensive adjective that means “self,” “the very one,” or “the same,” as in *Caesar ipse*, “Caesar himself.”
- Another demonstrative adjective is *idem, eadem, idem*, which is, basically, *is, ea, id* with *-dem* on the end. It means “the same.”
- There are nine additional adjectives, which are basically first and second declension, except for their genitive singulars ending in *-ius* and dative singulars ending in *-i*.
 - *alter, altera, alterum*: another of two, other
 - *alius, alia, aliud*: another
 - *sōlus, sōla, sōlum*,: only, single, alone
 - *tōtus, tōta, tōtum*: whole, all
 - *ūllus, ūlla, ūllum*: any
 - *nūllus, nūlla, nūllum*: no, none
 - *ūnus, ūna, ūnum*: one, single
 - *uter, utra, utrum*: which (of two) things
 - *neuter, neutra, neutrum*: neither
- In the plural, the case endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as they are for adjectives of the first and second declensions, as easy as *bonus, -a, -um*. In the singular, we just need to remember

the genitive ending in *-ius* and the dative ending in *-i*. There aren't many words that decline this way, but those that do are rather frequent in the scheme of things, so it's well worth knowing that they exist, even if you don't memorize the whole list immediately.

Drill: Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns

1. *Illa fēmina fortis hunc vīrum amābat.* That strong woman used to love this man.
2. *Illa hunc amābat.* That woman used to love this man.
3. *Lībertātem eōrum hominum laudābit Caesar ipse.* Caesar himself will praise the freedom of these men.
4. *Lībertātem eōrum laudābit ipse.* He himself will praise freedom of them, or He himself will praise their liberty.

A passage from Cicero

- In Rome, it was customary for young and aspiring politicians to launch prosecutions of older and corrupt politicians on behalf of exploited provincials. Cicero helped launch his own career with a prosecution of Lucius Verres, an especially corrupt governor of Sicily.
- In this passage, part of Cicero's rhetoric lies in how he rings the different cases of the masculine singular of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, "this one," or in this instance, "this man."
- Verres can apparently gain entrance to other people's homes



© iStock/Thinkstock

Cicero was a statesman and scholar living at the end of the Roman Republic; he is remembered today as Rome's greatest orator.

because household slaves, the lowest social class of all, love him. But what respectable member of the ruling class consorts on a familiar basis with someone else's slaves to gain unauthorized access to another respectable man's home?

- The passage reads as follows: *Huic hominī ... domus patet ...? Hunc vestrī iānitōrēs, hunc cubiculārī dīligunt; ... hic sōlus intrōdūcitur; cēterī ... frūgālissimī hominēs exclūduntur?* In English, we can feel Cicero's outrage: "For this man the house lies open? Your doorkeepers love this man? The chamber keepers love this man? This man alone is let in; while other very upstanding persons are locked out?"

Verba

alius, alia, aliud: other, another

ancilla, ancillae, f.: maidservant, female slave

cēterī, cēterae, cētera: the remaining, the other, the rest

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum: to erase, destroy

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum: esteem, love

hic, haec, hoc (demonstrative adj. and pron.): this, this one

homō, hominis, m.: human being, person, man

īdem, eadem, idem: the same

ille, illa, illud (demonstrative adj. and pron.): that, that one

ipse, ipsa, ipsum: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, the very

is, ea, id (as demonstrative adj.): this, that

is, ea, id (as personal pron.): he, she, it

iste, ista, istud (demonstrative adj. and pron.): that of yours, that (often used disparagingly)

neuter, neutra, neutrum: neither

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum: no, not any, none

pateō, patēre, patuī: lie open, be open, be accessible, be evident

sōlus, sōla, sōlum: only, alone

tōtus, tōta, tōtum: whole, entire

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum: any

uter, utra, utrum: which (of two things), either

vester, vestra, vestrum: your, yours (pl.)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum: call, summon

Memoranda

Please learn the declensions of *hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (App. §43); *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (App. §44); and *is*, *ea*, *id* (App. §45).

Agenda

- i. Recite the demonstrative adjectives/pronouns *ille*, *illa*, *illud*; *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*; and *is*, *ea*, *id*.

ii. Please translate the following phrases into Latin.

1. of those people
2. to/for this wisdom
3. by/with/from that fear
4. of this woman
5. to/for him
6. these heads (nom.)
7. of those kings
8. to/for that poet
9. under this cloud
10. her (acc.)
11. that body (acc.)
12. to/for those boys
13. into this city
14. in these fires
15. concerning that old man

iii. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Vidēsne ancillam huius domini?
2. Haec bāsia illī agricolae grātissima sunt.

3. Vītam tōtīus urbis custōdiēbat hic vir quem Caesar capere cupiet.
4. Dabisne huic puellae illōs librōs bonōs?
5. In hōc agrō pulchrō manēbit poēta ipse.
6. Hoc nūllī discipulō dīcere possum ipsa.
7. Dīmīttite hunc puerum et vocā filium alterīus mulieris.
8. Bellum contrā illam urbem miseram aget imperātor vester.
9. Illum poētam dīligēbam puer sed eum nunc (now) dēspiciō senex.
10. Hī mīlitēs quōs vidētis vīnum illā nocte bibēbant.
11. Istum nōn laudābimus quia rem pūblicam lēx eius dēlēbit.
12. Huiusne pontificis sapientiam laudābunt illī stultī?
13. Fōrma illīus puerī eīs patēbat.
14. Māter tua caedet hōs flōrēs pulchrōs quōs illī fēminae dabimus.
15. Vōcēs hōrum servōrum ā rēge sevērō nōn audientur.

The Perfect Tense Active System

Lecture 21

In this lecture, we will tackle three tenses: the perfect and the pluperfect in two moods and the future perfect in the indicative. In all, we'll look at five sets of endings, but four of these five sets (and half of the fifth) use the personal active endings that we already know. Further, the perfect-tense system is regular; the same rules apply to all verbs of any conjugation. The catch is that you need to know the rules for each tense, and you need to know the principal parts of the Latin verb you wish to conjugate. If you know a verb's principal parts and you know the rules, you can generate all the forms for all regular verbs, plus *possum* and *sum*.

Principal parts of model verbs

Conjugation	Principal Parts
First	amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum (love)
Second	videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum (see)
Third	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum (put, place)
Third -io	capiō, capere, cēpī, captum (take)
Fourth	sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum (feel, perceive)

The perfect-tense system

- Notice that in each of our model verbs, the third principal part ends in the letter *ī*, which is not one of the customary personal active endings. Indeed, the third principal part represents the first-person singular of the perfect active indicative, our first perfect-tense form: "I have verbed" or "I verbed."
- As we said, the imperfect tense refers to incomplete, continuing, or repeated action in the past. The perfect refers to action that was completed in the past.

- The Latin perfect actually maps onto two tenses in English: both the simple past, “I verbed,” and our own present perfect, “I have verbed.” In English, the present perfect refers to an action that has been completed but has a lingering impact on the present.
 - The sentence “I have fallen in love” implies that, although I have completed the process of falling in love, I am now, as a result, still in love.
 - In English, we cannot say, “I have fallen in love yesterday.” We need to switch to the simple past: “I fell in love yesterday!”
- The pluperfect refers to action completed in the past before another event in the past: “I **had gone** to the café near the Pantheon when I met the love of my life.”
- The future perfect refers to an event that one wishes to characterize as past in relation to some other future event: “I **will have met** the love of my life by Thursday.”

Perfect active indicative endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-ī	-imus
2	-istī	-istis
3	-it	-ērunt

Note: To form the perfect active indicative, we remove the *i* at the end of the third principal part of the verb and apply the endings.

Perfect active indicative conjugation of *amō**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum*: love

	Singular	Plural
1	amāvī	amāvimus
2	amāvistī	amāvistis
3	amāvit	amāvērunt

Perfect active indicative of *possum**possum, posse, potuī*: be able, can

	Singular	Plural
1	potuī	potuimus
2	potuistī	potuistis
3	potuit	potuērunt

Pluperfect active indicative endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-eram	-erāmus
2	-erās	-erātis
3	-erat	-erant

Note: The personal active endings are all present; we're just adding *era-* in front of them.

Pluperfect active indicative of *sentīō**sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus*: feel, perceive

	Singular	Plural
1	sēnseram	sēnsērāmus
2	sēnsērās	sēnsērātis
3	sēnserat	sēnserant

Future perfect active indicative endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-erō	-erimus
2	-eris	-eritis
3	-erit	-erint

Future perfect active indicative of *capiō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: take

	Singular	Plural
1	cēperō	cēperimus
2	cēperis	cēperitis
3	cēperit	cēperint

Perfect active subjunctive endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-erim	-erīmus
2	-erīs	-erītis
3	-erit	-erint

Note: The perfect subjunctive looks like the future perfect indicative in every form except the first- and second-person singular, and the pronunciation differs in the first- and second-person plurals, where we find a long ī in the second-to-last syllable. This long ī requires us to shift the accent to that syllable.

Perfect active subjunctive of *capiō**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum*: take

	Singular	Plural
1	cēperim	cēperīmus
2	cēperīs	cēperītis
3	cēperit	cēperint

Pluperfect active subjunctive endings

	Singular	Plural
1	-issem	-issēmus
2	-issēs	-issētis
3	-isset	-issent

Pluperfect active indicative of *videō**videō, videre, vīdī, vīsum*: see

	Singular	Plural
1	vīdissem	vīdissēmus
2	vīdissēs	vīdissētis
3	vīdisset	vīdissent

Active principal parts: *dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum*: lead

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Perfect Active		
Singular	dūxī	dūxerim
	dūxistī	dūxerīs
	dūxit	dūxerit
Plural	dūximus	dūxerīmus
	dūxistis	dūxerītis
	dūxērunt or -ēre	dūxerint
Pluperfect Active		
Singular	dūxeram	dūxissem
	dūxerās	dūxissēs
	dūxerat	dūxisset
Plural	dūxerāmus	dūxissēmus
	dūxerātis	dūxissētis
	dūxerant	dūxissent
Future Perfect Active		
Singular	dūxerō	
	dūxeris	
	dūxerit	
Plural	dūxerimus	
	dūxeritis	
	dūxerint	

- Whenever we see the perfect stem *dūx-*, we know that we are dealing with one of the perfect active tenses, rather than any of the tenses built on the present stem, *dūc-*.
- The perfect indicative endings are distinctive: *-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt*.
- The perfect subjunctive endings are characterized by *eri* before the personal active endings: *dūxerim, dūxerīs, dūxerit*.

- The pluperfect indicative endings are characterized by *era* before the personal active endings: *dūxeram, dūxerās, dūxerat*.
- The pluperfect subjunctive is characterized by *isse* plus the personal active endings: *dūxissem, dūxissēs, dūxisset*.
- The future perfect indicative is also characterized by *eri* before the personal endings: *dūxerō, dūxeris, dūxerit*.

Sentence practice

1. *Caesar militēs dūcit*. Caesar leads the soldiers. (present indicative)
2. *Caesar militēs dūcet*. Caesar will lead the soldiers. (future indicative)
3. *Caesar militēs dūcēbat*. Caesar was leading the soldiers. (imperfect indicative)
4. *Caesar militēs dūxit*. Caesar has led or led the soldiers. (perfect indicative)
5. *Caesar militēs dūxerat*. Caesar had led the soldiers. (pluperfect indicative)
6. *Caesar militēs dūxerit*. Caesar will have led the soldiers. (future perfect indicative)
7. *Militēs dūcat Caesar!* Let Caesar lead the soldiers! (present subjunctive)
8. *Caesarem dēlēgimus, ut Caesar militēs dūceret*. We chose (perfect indicative) Caesar, so that Caesar might lead the troops. (imperfect subjunctive)
9. *Caesarem dēlēgimus, ut Caesar militēs dūxerit*. We have chosen (present perfect indicative) Caesar, with the result that he led (or has led) the troops. (perfect subjunctive)

10. *Caesarem amābant, cum Caesar mīlitēs dūxisset.* They loved (imperfect indicative) Caesar, inasmuch as Caesar had led the soldiers. (pluperfect subjunctive)

Verba

annus, annī, m.: year

cīvis, cīvis, m./f.: citizen

compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositum: to arrange, settle

cum (prep. + abl.): with

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum: run, rush

dōnum, dōnī, n.: gift

dux, ducis: leader, guide, commander

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum: make, do

fidēlis, fidēle: faithful, loyal

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum: wage, conduct, carry on

labor, labōris, m.: labor, work

studium, studiī, n.: study, pursuit, eagerness

vīlla, vīllae, f.: villa, country house

Memoranda

Please learn the perfect active tenses (i.e., the perfect indicative and subjunctive, the pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, and the future perfect indicative) of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App.

§55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentio* (App. §57). Compare also the perfect tenses of *sum* (§52) and *possum* (App. §66).

Agenda

i. Conjugate *currō* in the tense and mood indicated (use the active voice).

1. perfect indicative
2. perfect subjunctive
3. pluperfect indicative
4. future perfect indicative
5. pluperfect subjunctive

ii. Please translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. That faithful maidservant praised (her) mistress. (Use *domina*.)
2. The great leader had waged (use *gerō*) many wars.
3. We will have eaten this food.
4. They used to worship those gods.
5. We have given that girl's books to her father.
6. Those men (of yours) had conspired against this city's leaders.
7. The emperor has made (arranged) peace with your (plural) enemies.
8. You (singular) will have seen the charm of this man whom I adore.

iii. Please translate the following sentences into English.

1. Hī servī magnum dolōrem habēbant.
2. Mīlitēs illius ducis nāvēs custōdire potuērunt.
3. Pontificī maximō grātissimum fuit vīnum quod eī dedistī.
4. Audīvistīne quod audīvī?
5. Congregābant cīvēs ut hanc audīrent.
6. Ē vīllā cucurrerant multae ancillae ut vidērent legiōnēs.
7. Laudābit fōrmam dominī poēta ut in hāc vīllā pulchrā manēre possit.
8. Brevēs annī fūgērunt.
9. Fīliās agricolae vocāverimus ut vērītātem discant.
10. Cīvibus labōrēs sevērōs dēderant lēgēs istīus rēgis.

Forming and Using Participles

Lecture 22

In this lecture, we will learn about a special category of adjectives that derive from verbs and, thus, retain some of the qualities of verbs. These adjectives are called “participles.” Participles retain tense—but not absolutely, only in relation to the main verb. Like verbs, they can govern cases. They have voice and can be active or passive. Despite these verbal qualities, however, participles are also adjectives and can modify nouns, and they agree with the nouns they modify in case, number, and gender. Finally, like other adjectives in Latin, particles can be used substantively, as stand-ins for nouns.

Generic English representation of Latin participles

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	verbing	n/a
Perfect	n/a	having been verbed
Future	going to verb, about to verb	going to be verbed, necessary to be verbed

- In English, we have a present active participle that ends in *-ing*, “verbing.”
 - Let’s look at an example: “Chanting endings till sunrise, the students burned with love of Latin.” The adjective *chanting* modifies *students*, but because *chanting* derives from the verb *chant*, it can take a direct object, in this case, *endings*.
 - Latin has an equivalent to our present active participle. In English, however, we can also make the present participle passive, but Latin has no present passive equivalent.

- Latin does have a perfect passive participle, which in English, we would render as “having been chanted.” On the other hand, Latin has no perfect active participle.
- The future tense in Latin offers both active (“going to chant” or “about to chant”) and passive participles. The future passive participle in Latin is, however, stronger than simply “going to be chanted.” The future passive participle carries with it the additional idea of obligation or necessity, which we capture by saying “necessary to be chanted” or “must be chanted.”

General rules for forming Latin participles

	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	present stem plus <i>-ns</i> (gen. <i>-ntis</i>)	n/a
Perfect	n/a	fourth principal part minus <i>-um</i> plus <i>-us, -a, -um</i>
Future	fourth principal part minus <i>-um</i> plus <i>-ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum</i>	present stem plus <i>-ndus, -nda, -ndum</i>

Notes: We need the first and second principal parts for conjugation identification, as well as for the formation of the present active and future passive participles.

We use the fourth principal part to form the perfect passive participle and the future active participle.

Steps in forming present active participles

1. Conjugation identification.
2. Is it first conjugation? If yes, remove the *-ō* from the first principal part and add *-āns*.
3. Is it second conjugation? If yes, remove the *-eō* from the first principal part and add *-ēns*.

4. Is it third, third *-iō*, or fourth conjugation? If yes, remove the *-ō* from the first principal part and add *-ēns*.

Examples:

- *amō, amāre*: *am* + *āns* = *amāns* (gen.: *amantis*); loving
- *videō, vidēre*: *vid* + *ēns* = *vidēns* (gen.: *videntis*); seeing
- *pōnō, pōnere*: *pōn* + *ēns* = *pōnēns* (gen.: *pōnentis*); placing
- *capiō, capere*: *capi* + *ēns* = *capiēns* (gen.: *capientis*); taking
- *sentiō, sentīre*: *senti* + *ēns* = *sentiēns* (gen.: *sentientis*); feeling

Steps in forming future passive participles

1. Conjugation identification.
2. Is it first conjugation? If yes, remove, the *-ō* from the first principal part and add *-andus, -a, -um*.
3. Is it second conjugation? If yes, remove the *-eō* from the first principal part and add *-endus, -a, -um*.
4. Is it third, third *-io*, or fourth conjugation? If yes, remove the *-ō* from the first principal part and add *-endus, -a, -um*.

Examples:

- *amō, amāre*: *am* *plus* *-andus, -a, -um* = *amandus, amanda, amandum*; necessary to be loved
- *videō, vidēre*: *vid* *plus* *-endus, -a, -um* = *videndus, -a, -um*; necessary to be seen

- pōnō, pōnere: pōn *plus* -endus, -a, -um = pōnendus, -a, -um; necessary to be placed
- capiō, capere: capi *plus* -endus, -a, -um = capiendus, -a, -um; necessary to be taken
- sentiō, sentīre: senti *plus* -endus, -a, -um = sentiendus, -a, -um; necessary to be felt

Perfect passive and future active participles

- Perfect passive and future active participles are even more straightforward because they are based on the fourth principal part.
- When the perfect passive participle exists, it can be formed from the fourth principal part. All we need to do is change the ending *-um* to *-us, -a, -um*. Examples:
 - amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: amatus, -a, -um; having been loved
 - videō, vidēre, vīsī, vīsum: vīsus, -a, -um; having been seen
 - pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: positus, -a, -um; having been placed
 - capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: captus, -a, -um; having been taken
 - sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum: sēnsus, -a, -um; having been felt
- For the future active participle, we remove the *-um* from the fourth principal part and add *-ūrus, -a, -um*. Examples:
 - amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: amātum *minus* -um *plus* -ūrus, -a, -um = amātūrus, -a, -um; going to love
 - videō, vidēre, vīsī, vīsum: vīsum *minus* -um *plus* -ūrus, -a, -um = vīsūrus, -a, -um; going to see
 - pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: positum *minus* -um *plus* -ūrus, -a, -um = positūrus, -a, -um; going to place

- capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: captum *minus* -um *plus* -ūrus, -a, -um = captūrus, -a, -um; going to take
- sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus: sēnsus *minus* -um *plus* -ūrus, -a, -um = sēnsūrus, -a, -um; going to feel

Declining participles

- All participles, except the present active participle, are first and second declension and decline like the word for “big,” *magnus, magna, magnum*.
- Present active participles, however, belong to the third declension. All three genders share *-ns* in the nominative singular. All three have *-ntis* in the genitive singular. The rest of the cases generally follow the rules for third-declension adjectives. Let’s try “loving soldier”:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīlēs amāns	mīlitēs amantēs
Genitive	mīlitis amantis	mīlitum amantium
Dative	mīlitī amantī	mīlitibus amantibus
Accusative	mīlitem amantem	mīlitēs amantēs
Ablative	mīlite amantī	mīlitibus amantibus

- The feminine form of the present active participle declines just like the masculine, but let’s review the neuter. Our example is “killing poison.”

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	venēnum interficiēns	venēna interficientia
Genitive	venēnī interficientis	venēnōrum interficientium
Dative	venēnō interficientī	venēnīs interficientibus
Accusative	venēnum interficiens	venēna interficientia
Ablative	venēnō interficientī	venēnīs interficientibus

Quiz

In the following sentences, you will hear a participle in English. Supply the participle in Latin using an equivalent form of our fourth-conjugation model verb: *sentio*, *sentire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsū*.

1. About to feel your pain, Molinari deployed a future active participle.
2. I want those things, the ones necessary to be felt.
3. Having been perceived by the surveillance camera, Amanda panicked.
4. Feeling the power of the divine Julius, the soldiers begged for battle.

Answers: 1. *sensūrus*, future active participle, nominative singular masculine; 2. *sentienda*, future passive participle, neuter plural accusative; 3. *sēnsa*, perfect passive participle, feminine singular nominative; 4. *sentientēs*, present active participle, nominative plural.

Common uses of the participle in Latin

- Consider the following sentences: (1) *Caesar milites dūcit*; “Caesar leads the soldiers.” (2) *Rōmānī Caesarem amant*; “The Romans love Caesar.”
 - We could combine these as clauses with the relative pronoun *qui*, *quae*, *quod*: *Rōmānī Caesarem, quī milites dūcit, amant*; “The Romans love Caesar, who leads the soldiers.”



The English words *emperor* and *empire* derive from Caesar's title, *imperātor*, meaning “commander” or “general.”

© Getty Images/Photos.com/Thinkstock

- But in Latin, we could also use a present active participle in place of the subordinate clause: *Romānī Caesarem milītēs dūcentem amant*.
- The nominative Romans love the accusative Caesar, *Caesarem*. But what adjective modifies *Caesarem*? The answer is the present active participle *dūcentem*, which means “leading.”
- What about *milītēs*? What case are the soldiers? Accusative. Why? Are they the object of the verb *amant*? No, the Romans don’t love the soldiers; they love Caesar. Why, then, are the *milītēs* in the accusative? They are the object of the participle *dūcentem*.
- Let’s try translating word for word: The Romans (*Romānī*) love (*amant*) “Caesar leading soldiers.” In English, we would say, “The Romans love Caesar, who is leading the soldiers.”
- This is an important lesson. Latin frequently uses participles where we in English would prefer a subordinate clause. Latin can use a participle as the equivalent of a subordinate clause because inflection leaves no doubt as to how the words relate to each other. English provides far fewer clues. We need to put participles next to the words they modify. Latin is freer.
- Latin also uses participles in the ablative to create what is called an absolute construction. Consider the following sentence: *Hostis militem interfecit*; “The enemy killed the soldier.”
 - If we form a perfect passive participle with *interficiō*, we can describe the soldier as a *mīles interfectus*, a “killed soldier.”
 - We could then put this phrase into the ablative to provide some background to another thought: *Mīlite interfecitō, Caesar bellum gerit*; “With the soldier having been killed, Caesar wages war,” or “Because the soldier was killed, Caesar wages war.”

- The two words *mīlite interfectō* are both in the ablative, and *interfectō* modifies *mīlite*, but neither one of them is connected syntactically to the rest of the sentence. A phrase that is not connected by some syntactic thread to the rest of the sentence is said to be “absolute.” The term derives from the Latin verb *absolvō*, “to set free.” The ablative absolute is “set free” from the rest of the sentence. An absolute construction has no direct syntactical relationship to other words in the sentence.
- Finally, let’s look at two Latin phrases from the Great Seal of the United States: *novus ōrdō seclōrum*, “a new order of the ages,” and *annuit coeptis*. The second phrase here is more complex; *annuō*, *annuere*, *annuī* means to nod in approval. Literally, we would translate the phrase as “it [probably the floating eye, which represents divine providence or good fortune] has nodded its approval upon the things having been begun,” that is, the new American republic.

Verba

ad (prep. + acc.): to, toward, near

annuō, annuere, annuī, annūtum: nod, nod to, approve

coepī, coepisse, coeptum: began (defective verb occurring only in the past tense; for present-tense system, use *incipiō*)

crās (adv.): tomorrow

frāter, frātris, m.: brother

herī (adv.): yesterday

hodiē (adv.): today

iānua, iānuae, f.: door

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, commence

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum: kill, murder

noster, nostra, nostrum: our, ours

novus, nova, novum: new

ōrdō, ordinis, m: order, arrangement, rank

soror, sorōris, f.: sister

stō, stāre, stetī, statum: stand

venēnum, venēnī, n.: potion, drug, poison

Memoranda

Please learn to form and translate the participles of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentīō* (App. §57). For the declension of the third-declension present active participle, see App. §29. All other participles are first and second declension and may be declined according to the pattern of *magnus* (App. §23).

Agenda

- i. Conjugate the verb *interficiō* in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.
 1. future passive indicative
 2. pluperfect active subjunctive
 3. perfect active indicative
 4. imperfect passive indicative
- ii. Decline *new order*.

iii. Use participles to translate the following phrases into Latin.

1. listening ears (accusative)
2. the wine, having been drunk (nominative)
3. to/for the soldier about to slay
4. by/with the deceiving leader
5. of the murdered king
6. the wounds, having been perceived (nominative)
7. the gods, necessary to be worshipped (accusative)
8. with the city captured
9. to/for an approving sister
10. into the setting sun
11. of my brother, about to summon
12. with the enemies having been seen

iv. Please translate the following sentences into English. Remember that the best translation for a participle is sometimes a subordinate clause.

1. Ducem bellum agentem nōn laudēmus.
2. Urbe victā, cīvēs miserī sunt.
3. Mentibus sapientiam amantibus grātissimus est hic labor.
4. Istōs rem pūblicam dēlētūrōs crās vidēbimus.

5. Servīs herī captīs, ille dominus hodiē laetus est.
6. Ad mulierem dōna dantem multae cucurrerant puellae.
7. Quid requīritis, sorōre vestrā redditā?
8. Puer, quem ad iānuam vīllae stantem videō, pulcher est. Estne frāter tuus?
9. Nostrō dolōre positō, incipiat annus novus!
10. Potesne dīligere ducēs lēgēs nostrās dēspicientēs?

Using the Infinitive

Lecture 23

In this lecture, we will review two forms we've already studied, the present infinitive, both active and passive. We will then expand our morphological knowledge by four infinitives. We will also discuss the sequence of tenses and look more closely at a common way of speaking about people behind their backs or reporting what they said, with or without permission, to third parties. We call this sort of talk "indirect statement" or "indirect discourse." Infinitives play a key role in Latin when authors report people's statements indirectly to third parties; they serve as one of the main linchpins in Latin historical prose and are crucial for reading Latin. Infinitives come in two voices, active and passive, and three tenses, present, perfect, and future, for a total of six forms.

Generic English representation of Latin infinitives

Infinitive		
	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	to verb	to be verbed
Perfect	to have verbed	to have been verbed
Future	to be about to verb	to be about to be verbed

- To form a present active infinitive in English, we put the preposition "to" before the verb (e.g., "to love"). To form a present passive infinitive in English, we combine the present infinitive of the verb "to be" with the past passive participle of the verb in question ("to be loved").
- To form the perfect active infinitive in English, we use "to have" plus the past participle ("to have loved"). The perfect passive infinitive in English combines "to have been" with the past participle ("to have been loved").

- For the future active infinitive in English, we have “to be about to” (“to be about to love”), and for the future passive infinitive, we have “to be about to be” (“to be about to be loved”).

Generic rules for forming Latin infinitives

Infinitive		
	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present	<i>-re</i> [= second principal part]	For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, change the final <i>-e</i> of the second principal part to <i>-ī</i> ; for the third and third- <i>iō</i> , change the final <i>-ere</i> to <i>-ī</i> .
Perfect	third principal part minus <i>-ī</i> plus <i>-isse</i>	fourth principal part minus <i>-um</i> plus <i>-us</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> with the helping infinitive <i>esse</i> (two separate words)
Future	fourth principal part minus <i>-um</i> plus <i>-ūrus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> with the helping infinitive <i>esse</i> (two separate words)	fourth principal part (no changes) plus <i>-īrī</i>

- The present active infinitive of all verbs is easy to find; it's the second principal part, the one that ends in *-re*. Examples:
 - amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum* = *amāre*; to love
 - videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum* = *vidēre*; to see
 - sentiō, sentīre, sensī, sensum* = *sentīre*; to feel
- The present passive infinitive of first, second, and fourth conjugations is formed by simply changing the final *-e* of the present active infinitive to a long *-ī*. Examples:
 - amāre* → *amārī*; to be loved
 - vidēre* → *vidērī*; to be seen

- sentīre → sentīrī; to be felt
- For the third conjugation and third -iō, once again, the present active infinitive is simply the second principal part. Examples:
 - pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum = ponere; to place
 - capiō, capere, cēpī, captum = capere; to take.
- To make a third conjugation or third -iō present active infinitive passive, we remove the -ere and replace that ending with a long -ī. Examples:
 - pōnere → pōnī; to be placed
 - capere → capī; to be taken

Perfect active infinitive

- For the perfect active infinitive, one rule works for all conjugations: Find the third principal part, remove the -ī, and add -isse. Examples:
 - sēnsī → sēnsisse; to have felt
 - potuī → potuisse; to have been able

Quiz

You will hear the perfect active infinitive in English and the principal parts of the verb in Latin. Please provide the perfect active infinitive in Latin.

1. to have praised; *laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum*
2. to have killed; *interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum.*
3. to have been; *sum, esse, fuī, futūrum*
4. to have conquered; *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum*
5. to have written; *scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum*

Answers: 1. *laudāvisse*, 2. *interfēcisse*, 3. *fuisse*, 4. *vīcisse*, 5. *scrīpsisse*.

Perfect passive infinitive

- If we can make a verb passive (not all verbs can be made passive, e.g., “to be”) and if the verb has a perfect passive participle, we can form a perfect passive infinitive.
- To form a perfect passive participle, we change the end of the fourth principal part from *-um* to *-us*, *-a*, *-um* (covering all three genders). In Latin, the perfect passive infinitive is a compound. We combine the perfect participle with a helping infinitive, *esse*. By itself, *esse* means “to be,” but when combined with the past participle, it is the equivalent of “to have been.” Examples:
 - *amātus esse*, *amata esse*, *amatum esse*; to have been loved
 - *vīsus esse*, *vīsa esse*, *vīsum esse*; to have been seen
 - *positus*, *-a*, *-um esse*; to have been placed
 - *captus*, *-a*, *-um esse*; to have been taken
 - *sēnsus*, *-a*, *-um esse*; to have been felt

Future active infinitive

- The future active infinitive is also simple to form. We take the fourth principal part, turn it into a future active participle, and combine it with the helping infinitive *esse*. Examples:
 - *amō*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*: *amātum minus -um plus -ūrus*, *-a*, *-um* = *amātūrus*, *-a*, *-um*. We then combine this form with *esse*, yielding *amātūrus*, *-a*, *-um esse*; to be going to love.
 - *videō*, *vidēre*, *vīdī*, *vīsum*: *vīsūrus esse*, *vīsūra esse*, *vīsūrum esse*; to be going to see
 - *pōnō*, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*: *positūrum esse* (neuter); to be going to place
 - *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*: *captūrum esse* (neuter); to be going to take

- sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū: sēnsūrum esse (neuter); to be going to feel

Future passive infinitive

- The future passive infinitive appears only rarely. The rule for it is as follows: Retain the *-um* of the fourth principal part and combine that part with the helping infinitive *īrī*, which means “to be going to be verbed.” Examples:
 - amātum *īrī*: to be going to be loved
 - vīsum *īrī*: to be going to be seen
 - positum *īrī*: to be going to be placed
 - captum *īrī*: to be going to be taken
 - sēnsūrum *īrī*: to be going to be felt

The meaning of infinitives

- Like participles, the tense of infinitives is relative to the main verb. Let’s consider a simple example dealing with the love of a father for his only daughter, a daughter he married off to a man 30 years her senior for political advantage.
 - We start with the following sentence in the present tense: *Caesar Iuliam amāre potest*; “Caesar is able to love Julia [his only daughter].” The present active infinitive takes place at the same time as “can.”
 - Next, we make the main verb past tense but keep the infinitive in the present: *Caesar Iuliam amāre potuit*; “Caesar was able to love Julia.” “To love,” although a present infinitive, completes the meaning of a past-tense verb; thus, whatever “present” it implies is “present” only relative to the main verb.
- *Necesse est* means “it is necessary.” *Necesse erat* means “it was necessary.” *Necesse erit* means “it will be necessary.” Let’s combine these phrases with some infinitives and observe the impact

of the tense of the main verb on the relative time of the infinitive—whatever its ostensible tense.

- *Necesse est Rōmam vīsisse*; “It **is** necessary **to have seen** Rome.” Seeing Rome should have taken place before the present.
- *Necesse erit Rōmam vīsisse*; “It **will be** necessary **to have seen** Rome.” The speaker may not have seen Rome yet, but this action will have been completed by the time the present arrives in relation to the future represented by *erit*.
- *Necesse erat Rōmam vīsisse*; “It **was** necessary **to have seen** Rome.” Before some point in the past, it was necessary to have completed the action of seeing Rome.
- No matter what the tense of the main verb, the perfect infinitive represents action completed before that verb, whether in the past, present, or future. The tense of an infinitive is relative. The present infinitive will happen at the same time, the perfect infinitive will have been completed before, and the future infinitive will refer to action that will take place after whatever time may be indicated by the main verb.

Indirect discourse

- One of the most significant uses of infinitives in the Latin language is to talk about people behind their backs, to report statements secondhand to third parties.
- The verb *dīcō*, *dīcere*, *dīxī*, *dictum* means “say” in Latin. *Quid dīxit* means “What did he say?” With that knowledge, let’s translate a few sentences.
- *Caesar Iuliam amat. Quid dīxit Molinārius? Molinārius dīxit Caesarem Iuliam amāre*. In English, these sentences read: “Caesar loves Julia. What did Molinārius say? Molinārius said Caesar to love Julia [literally],” or “Molinārius said that Caesar loved Julia.”

- In idiomatic English, we report an indirect statement after the conjunction “that,” which allows us to join the reported statement to the main verb.
- We also adjust the tense of “love” from present, “Caesar loves Julia,” to past, “Caesar loved Julia,” because we report this statement after a past-tense verb: “Molinārius said [in the past] that Caesar loved Julia [at that same time in the past, which was, at the moment he made the statement, in the present, but at the time of the reporting is past, hence the adjustment in tense to keep the verbs in harmony].” Latin accomplishes all this with the infinitive.
- The main verb *dixit* is past, but the infinitive is present because the present infinitive refers to action that took place at the same time as the main verb. We can understand the literal Latin, even if it is not our way of speaking.
- Compare the literal translation of each of the following with its more idiomatic English equivalent.
 - *Molinārius dicit Caesarem Iuliam amare.* “Molinārius says Caesar to love Julia.” “Molinārius says that Caesar loves Julia.”
 - *Molinārius dixit Caesarem Iuliam amare.* “Molinārius said Caesar to love Julia.” “Molinārius said that Caesar loved Julia.”
 - *Molinārius dicit Caesarem Iuliam amāvisse.* “Molinārius says Caesar to have loved Julia.” “Molinārius says that Caesar loved Julia.”
 - *Molinārius dixit Caesarem Iuliam amāvisse.* “Molinārius said Caesar to have loved Julia.” “Molinārius said that Caesar had loved Julia.”
- Because the perfect infinitive refers to action that takes place before the main verb, in each instance, the idiomatic translation had to be adjusted to keep the tense of the reported statement ahead of the

main verb. This is called the “sequence of tenses.” Which tense follows or precedes which? To keep the completed action ahead of the past tense of the main verb, we have to shift the tense of the reported statement to pluperfect so that it would be “even more completed.”

Subjects of infinitives

- When we first introduced the cases, we said that we use the nominative case for subjects and the accusative case for direct objects, but in fact, we also use the accusative case for the subjects of infinitives.
- Let's return to an indirect statement: *Molinārius dīcit Caesarem Iuliam amātūrum esse*. “Molinarius says that Caesar will love Julia,” or more literally, “Molinarius says Caesar to be going to love Julia.” *Caesarem* is the accusative subject of *amātūrum esse*, an indirect statement introduced by the verb *dīcit*.

Verba

amīca, amīcae, f.: female friend

amīcus, amīcī, m.: male friend

dea, deae, f.: goddess (dative and ablative plural = *deabus*)

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum: owe, ought (often with infinitive, e.g., *dēbeō dūcere* = I ought to lead)

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum: err, be mistaken, wander

extinguō, extinguere, exstīnxī, exstīnctum: extinguish

hūmānus, hūmāna, hūmānum: human

īra, īrae, f.: anger

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum: help, aid, assist

magister, magistrī, m. (magistra, magistrae, f.): teacher, schoolmaster/
schoolmistress

malus, mala, malum: bad, wicked, evil

necesse est/erat/erit: it is/was/will be necessary

pecūnia, pecūniae, f.: money

putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum: think, judge, suppose, imagine

Rōma, Rōmae, f.: Rome

semper (adv.): always

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum: frighten, terrify

via, viae, f.: street, road, way

Memoranda

Please learn to form and translate the infinitives of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

- i. Decline *frightened father*. (Use the perfect participle of *terreō*.)
- ii. Provide the Latin infinitive in the tense and voice indicated and then translate each form.
 1. err (perfect active)
 2. owe (present passive)

3. frighten (future active)
4. worship (perfect passive)
5. do (present passive)

iii. Please translate the following sentences into Latin.

1. To err is human.
2. It was necessary to help my (male) friend.
3. You (singular) could have given (literally, “you are able to have given”) money to her.
4. We will desire to be seen by that man.
5. The king said that the nation would conquer.
6. I said that the (male) teacher had deceived the (female) students.
7. The chief priest says that people ought to worship the goddess.
8. My mother will say that it is necessary to have courage.

iv. Please translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ex urbe fugere nōn cupit ille senex.
2. Hōs puerōs terrēre nōn dēbēmus.
3. Potuistīne iuvāre eās puellās, fēminibus in viā stantibus?
4. Ignibus eōrum extīnctīs, hostēs vidēre nōn potuimus.
5. Poētam laudāvisse necesse erat, sed nihil dīxerat hic discipulus.

6. Dīcit amīcōs vestrōs multa animālia in agrīs errantia vīdisse.
7. Dīxērunt hae puellae illās ancillās ā dominō sevērō territās esse.
8. Cibō ēsō, vīnum agricolārum bibere cupīvērunt mīlitēs.
9. Istōs cīvēs malōs pontificem fidēlem interfectūrōs esse dīxit pater noster.
10. Populum nōn dolitūrum esse dux semper dīcēbat, quī bellum actūrus erat ipse.

Reading a Passage from Caesar

Lecture 24

In the last three lectures, we acquired the perfect active tenses, participles, and infinitives. Armed with this arsenal, we can now make our way through a good deal of authentic Latin prose—not easily, because we lack vocabulary and practice, but capably and with syntactical understanding. In this lecture, we will apply some of our recently hard-won forms on a passage from Julius Caesar’s *Commentaries on the Gallic War*, or *Commentārii dē bellō Gallicō*.

Caesar’s *Commentaries*

- Caesar’s *Commentaries* were composed as if they were dispatches or reports to the Senate. Whereas other politicians kept the common people at bay, Caesar, although he was as aristocratic as the rest of Rome’s ruling class, made a show of communicating with the people. His supporters would have made sure that Caesar’s dispatches reached a wide audience in Rome; in this way, Caesar could ensure that, despite his absence from Rome while campaigning in Gaul, his influence would be felt and he would not be forgotten.
- One of the marks of a good general is a solid knowledge of the enemy, and among the enemies that loomed large during the Gallic campaign were the Germans. Caesar first entered Gaul, ostensibly to assist a Gallic tribe that had invited in, but then fell under the dominion of, German mercenaries. And the Germans were restless, frequently crossing the Rhine, attacking Gauls, and attempting to settle down. Caesar’s conquest of Gaul proceeded partly on the basis of protecting the Gauls, and Romans, too, from the Germans.
- The Germans were formidable and frightening to Roman civilians and soldiers alike. They were also objects of fascination; thus, Caesar takes time out of his narrative to describe them in some detail. A description of the German enemy will serve as the basis of the reading for this lecture.

From Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War*

*Germānī multum ab hāc
consuetūdine [Gallōrum]
differunt. Nam [Germānī] neque
Druidēs habent, quī rēbus
dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs
student. Deōrum numerō eōs
[esse] sōlōs [Germānī] dūcunt,
quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē
opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et
Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs
[deōs] nē fāmā quidem
accēpērunt.*

The Germans differ very much from this custom of the Gauls. For the Germans neither have Druids, of the sort who are in charge of divine things, nor are they eager for animal sacrifices. In the gods' number, the Germans consider those alone to be whom they perceive and by whose power they are openly assisted, the Sun and Fire and the Moon; the other gods they have not heard of, even by report.

Verba

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum: hear of, receive, accept

apertē (adv.): openly

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum: perceive

consuetūdō, consuetūdinis, f.: custom

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum: differ

dīvīnus, dīvīna, dīvīnum: of the gods, divine

Druidēs, Druidum, m.: the Druids, the priests of the Celts in Gaul and Britain

fāma, fāmae, f.: rumor, report, fame, slander

Gallus, Galla, Gallum: of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as noun: the Gauls, inhabiting Gaul, northern Italy, etc.

Germānus, Germāna, Germānum: of Germany, German

lūna, lūnae, f.: moon

multum (adv.): very much

nam: for, certainly, indeed

nē ... quidem: not even, not so much as

negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum: to deny (used rather than dīcō ... nōn to introduce a negative indirect statement)

neque (conj.): and not; not even (neque ... neque = neither ... nor)

numerus, numerī, m.: number

ops, opis, f.: power, strength, property, assistance

praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrum: be in charge of; be responsible for (takes dative object)

reliquus, reliqua, reliquum: the rest of, the remaining, the other

rēs, reī, f.: thing (any object of imagination or experience), matter, affair; deed; property, wealth

sacrificium, sacrificiī, n.: animal sacrifice

studeō, studēre, studuī: to be eager for, to concentrate on, to study (takes dative object)

Memoranda

Please review the declensions of the demonstrative pronouns and adjectives *hic, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud*; and *is, ea, id* (App. §§43–45) and the relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod* (App. §46).

Agenda

- i. Conjugate *praesum* in the tense and mood indicated.
 1. present subjunctive
 2. perfect indicative
 3. pluperfect subjunctive
- ii. Using a participle, decline *differing report*.
- iii. Please translate the following sentences into English.
 1. Numerum hostium magnum futurum esse negat imperātor.
 2. Crēvistīne hunc sacrificium ā imperātōre factum esse posse?
 3. Hōc dōnō acceptō, pācī novae duo populī nostrī studeant.
 4. Nōn dolēbimus, nam illōs puerōs nostrā ope reliquā iuvāre possumus.
 5. Hīs rēbus gestīs, amīcam meam frātrem suum (*her*) neque dīligere neque laudāre posse cernēbam.
 6. Magnō cum timōre ē villā fūgērunt ancillae quās iste dominus interficere cupiēbat.

7. Ā consuetūdine rēgum vestrōrum lēgēs huius reī publicae multum differēbant.
8. Discipulae dīxērunt sē (*they, accusative*) disciplīnā illūs magistrī nihil didicisse.
9. Fāmā ignis magnī audītā, in viās urbis cīvēs territī cucurrērunt.
10. Pontificēs sacrificiīs semper praeesse, sed rēgem rēbus humanīs studēre dēbēre dīcit ille senex audax.

The Perfect Tense Passive System

Lecture 25

In the last lecture, we read a paragraph of genuine Latin prose, complete with indirect statement and high-level syntactical guideposts. In this lecture, we will round out our knowledge of the Latin verb, unlocking two mysteries: First, we will learn the future and imperfect of the irregular verb *sum* (and *possum*), and then, we will then use the forms of *sum* as helping verbs to form the perfect passive tenses of all the other verbs.

Conjugation of *sum* (irregular verb)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum (or *fore*): be

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>Present</i>		<i>Present</i>	
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
<i>Imperfect</i>		<i>Imperfect</i>	
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essētis	essēs
erat	erant	esset	essent
<i>Future</i>			
erō	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		

Basic rules of the perfect passive

- To generate the forms of the perfect passive, we fashion two-word compounds that consist of the past participle in combination with the present indicative of *sum* to form the perfect passive indicative or in combination with the present subjunctive of *sum* to form the perfect passive subjunctive.

- Let's try *amō*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum* as an example. From the fourth principal part, *amātum*, we remove the *-um* and add *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, our first- and second-declension adjective endings. *Amātum* becomes *amātus*, *-a*, *-um*, which by itself means “having been loved.”
- We next combine *amatus*, *amata*, or *amatum* with the present indicative of *sum* as two separate words. The result is the compound verb *amātus sum*, *amāta sum*, or *amātum sum*, depending on the gender of the subject.
- Note that the compound takes on a meaning separate from its individual parts. Although *amātus* by itself means “having been loved” and *sum* by itself means “I am,” in the compound, *sum* suppresses its verbal individuality to become a helping verb. *Amātus sum* means “I have been loved” (masculine), and *amāta sum* means “I have been loved” (feminine). This verbal adjective will agree in gender and number with its subject. The case will be nominative.

Perfect passive system: First conjugation

amō, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*: love

Passive Voice	
Indicative	Subjunctive
Perfect	
amātus, -a, um sum	amātus, -a, um sim
amātus, -a, um es	amātus, -a, um sīs
amātus, -a, um est	amātus, -a, um sit
amātī, -ae, -a sumus	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus
amātī, -ae, -a estis	amātī, -ae, -a sītis
amātī, -ae, -a sunt	amātī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect	
amātus, -a, um eram	amātus, -a, um essem
amātus, -a, um erās	amātus, -a, um essēs
amātus, -a, um erat	amātus, -a, um esset
amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus
amātī, -ae, -a erātis	amātī, -ae, -a essētis
amātī, -ae, -a erant	amātī, -ae, -a essent

<i>Future Perfect</i>	
amātus, -a, um erō	
amātus, -a, um eris	
amātus, -a, um erit	
amātī, -ae, -a erimus	
amātī, -ae, -a eritis	
amātī, -ae, -a erunt	

Perfect passive system: Second conjugation

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see

Passive Voice	
Indicative	Subjunctive
<i>Perfect</i>	
vīsus, -a, um sum	vīsus, -a, um sīm
vīsus, -a, um es	vīsus, -a, um sīs
vīsus, -a, um est	vīsus, -a, um sit
vīsī, -ae, -a sumus	vīsī, -ae, -a sīmus
vīsī, -ae, -a estis	vīsī, -ae, -a sītis
vīsī, -ae, -a sunt	vīsī, -ae, -a sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>	
vīsus, -a, um eram	vīsus, -a, um essem
vīsus, -a, um erās	vīsus, -a, um essēs
vīsus, -a, um erat	vīsus, -a, um esset
vīsī, -ae, -a erāmus	vīsī, -ae, -a essēmus
vīsī, -ae, -a erātis	vīsī, -ae, -a essētis
vīsī, -ae, -a erant	vīsī, -ae, -a essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>	
vīsus, -a, um erō	
vīsus, -a, um eris	
vīsus, -a, um erit	
vīsī, -ae, -a erimus	
vīsī, -ae, -a eritis	
vīsī, -ae, -a erunt	

Perfect passive system: Third conjugation

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: place

Passive Voice	
Indicative	Subjunctive
<i>Perfect</i>	
positus, -a, um sum	positus, -a, um sim
positus, -a, um es	positus, -a, um sīs
positus, -a, um est	positus, -a, um sit
positī, -ae, -a sumus	positī, -ae, -a sīmus
positī, -ae, -a estis	positī, -ae, -a sītis
positī, -ae, -a sunt	positī, -ae, -a sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>	
positus, -a, um eram	positus, -a, um essem
positus, -a, um erās	positus, -a, um essēs
positus, -a, um erat	positus, -a, um esset
positī, -ae, -a erāmus	positī, -ae, -a essēmus
positī, -ae, -a erātis	positī, -ae, -a essētis
positī, -ae, -a erant	positī, -ae, -a essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>	
positus, -a, um erō	
positus, -a, um eris	
positus, -a, um erit	
positī, -ae, -a erimus	
positī, -ae, -a eritis	
positī, -ae, -a erunt	

Perfect passive system: Third -io conjugation

capīō, capere, cēpī, captum: take

Passive Voice	
Indicative	Subjunctive
<i>Perfect</i>	
captus, -a, um sum	captus, -a, um sim
captus, -a, um es	captus, -a, um sīs
captus, -a, um est	captus, -a, um sit
captī, -ae, -a sumus	captī, -ae, -a sīmus
captī, -ae, -a estis	captī, -ae, -a sītis
captī, -ae, -a sunt	captī, -ae, -a sint
<i>Pluperfect</i>	
captus, -a, um eram	captus, -a, um essem
captus, -a, um erās	captus, -a, um essēs
captus, -a, um erat	captus, -a, um esset
captī, -ae, -a erāmus	captī, -ae, -a essēmus
captī, -ae, -a erātis	captī, -ae, -a essētis
captī, -ae, -a erant	captī, -ae, -a essent
<i>Future Perfect</i>	
captus, -a, um erō	
captus, -a, um eris	
captus, -a, um erit	
captī, -ae, -a erimus	
captī, -ae, -a eritis	
captī, -ae, -a erunt	

Perfect passive system: Fourth conjugation

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus: feel

Passive Voice	
Indicative	Subjunctive
Perfect	
sēnsus, -a, um sum	sēnsus, -a, um sim
sēnsus, -a, um es	sēnsus, -a, um sīs
sēnsus, -a, um est	sēnsus, -a, um sit
sēnsī, -ae, -a sumus	sēnsī, -ae, -a sīmus
sēnsī, -ae, -a estis	sēnsī, -ae, -a sītis
sēnsī, -ae, -a sunt	sēnsī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect	
sēnsus, -a, um eram	sēnsus, -a, um essem
sēnsus, -a, um erās	sēnsus, -a, um essētis
sēnsus, -a, um erat	sēnsus, -a, um esset
sēnsī, -ae, -a erāmus	sēnsī, -ae, -a essēmus
sēnsī, -ae, -a erātis	sēnsī, -ae, -a essētis
sēnsī, -ae, -a erant	sēnsī, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect	
sēnsus, -a, um erō	
sēnsus, -a, um eris	
sēnsus, -a, um erit	
sēnsī, -ae, -a erimus	
sēnsī, -ae, -a eritis	
sēnsī, -ae, -a erunt	

Eutropius describes Caesar's murder

- The late-4th-century historian Eutropius held the position of *magister memoriae* ("master of [the emperor's] memory") and was responsible for bringing the emperor up to speed on Roman history. He wrote *Breviārum historiae Rōmānae* ("*Abbreviated Roman History*"), in which he describes Caesar's murder.

- Eutropius writes: *Caesar, cum senātus ... vēnisset ad cūriam, trībus et vīgintī vulneribus confossus est*, meaning “Caesar, when the Senate had come to the Senate chamber, was stabbed by means of three and twenty puncture wounds.”
 - *Cum* clauses with the subjunctive can be found everywhere in Latin prose. English translations sound just like an indicative pluperfect. Can *cum* clauses appear with the indicative? Yes, but in those cases, *cum* does not mean “when, since, or as” but “whenever.” We adjust how we translate *cum* based on the mood of the verb, and this illustrates an important distinction between English and Latin.
 - In English, we signal nuance with a different conjunction. “Whenever” indicates repeated action, whereas “when” does not. Latin lacks that rich variety in conjunctions; instead, it signals a different aspect to its view of time through the mood of the verb. If Latin students find this difficult, it’s because our native language does not train us to be as sensitive to mood as it does to other clues. Every language uses its own set of markers.
- According to Eutropius, Caesar was murdered because he had acted “contrary to the custom of Roman liberty”: *contrā cōnsuetūdinem Rōmānae libertātis*.

Verba

amor, amōris, m.: love

antīquus, antīqua, antīquum: ancient

cēna, cēnae, f.: dinner

cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātum: dine

cōnfodiō, cōnfodere, cōnfōdī, cōnfossum: stab

cum (conj.): when, since, although (with subjunctive); whenever (with indicative)

cūria, cūriae, f.: senate house

dulcis, dulce: pleasant, sweet, agreeable

epistula, epistulae, f.: letter, epistle

ergō (adv.): therefore

hospes, hospitis, m.: guest, stranger; host

lēgātus, lēgātī, m.: ambassador

libertās, libertātis, f.: freedom, liberty

longus, longa, longum: long

memoria, memoriae, f.: memory, recollection

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum: send

numquam (adv.): never

omnis, omne: all, every

per (prep. + acc.): through

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum: write, compose

senātus, senātūs, m. (fourth-declension noun): senate

servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum: save, keep, preserve

Memoranda

Please learn the imperfect (indicative and subjunctive) and the future indicative of *sum* (§52) and *possum* (App. §66).

Learn the perfect passive tenses (i.e., the perfect indicative and subjunctive, pluperfect indicative and subjunctive, and future perfect indicative) of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

- i. Conjugate *mittō* in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.
 1. perfect passive indicative
 2. pluperfect passive indicative
 3. pluperfect passive subjunctive
 4. future perfect active indicative
- ii. Translate the following into Latin. Unless otherwise indicated, use the indicative mood.
 1. We were (imperfect).
 2. You (plural) will be.
 3. I have been.
 4. They will have been.
 5. She had been.
 6. He was (imperfect).

7. I was (imperfect subjunctive).
 8. You (plural) had been (subjunctive).
 9. They will be.
 10. I will be able to speak.
 11. She was able (imperfect) to write.
 12. They were able (perfect subjunctive) to run.
- iii. Please translate the following into English.
1. Epistulās longās virgō misera scrīpserat quae ad patrem meum numquam missae sunt.
 2. Cum servus captus esset, brevis libertātis memoria erat dulcis.
 3. Cēna hospitibus grātissima ab omnibus laudāta est.
 4. Cīvēs bellō studēre negat rex noster; ergō lēgātōs ā Caesare missōs accipiet.
 5. Omnēs ancillae in agrōs missae erant ut ignem extīnguerent.
 6. Ope māttris tuae haec puella fortis nōn capiētur.
 7. Caesare cōfossō, multī cīvēs dīxērunt libertātem servātam esse.
 8. Cum istum contrā rem pūblicam coniūrāvisse sentiās, epistulam eius legēs?
 9. Cum frātre tuo in cūriam crās veniēmus ut hōs pontificēs magnōs audiāmus.
 10. Lēgātī caesī sunt et vestrī amīcī nāve fūgērunt; ceterī captī sunt.

Deponent Verbs

Lecture 26

In this lecture, we will investigate a class of verbs that are not what they appear to be. These verbs are what grammarians call “deponents” because they “put” or “place” (from *pōnō*) their active endings aside (“aside” is the “de” part of *dē-pōnō*). Deponents have only passive endings, no active endings. These verbs look passive, and if they were, we’d hardly need to mention them. But they’re not passive; they dress up passively but actively perform their actions on objects. There are also some verbs, “semi-deponents,” that are active in some tenses and passive in others. How can we tell true passives from actives when they’re all wearing the same verbal clothing? The answer is simple: by their principal parts.

Active and passive principal parts

	Active	Passive
1 st Conj.	amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: to love	amōr, amārī, amātus sum: to be loved
2 nd Conj.	videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: to see	videor, vidērī, vīsus sum: to be seen
3 rd Conj.	pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: to place	pōnor, pōnī, positus sum: to be placed
3 rd -io Conj.	capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: to take	capior, capī, captus sum: to be taken
4 th Conj.	sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus: to feel	sentior, sentīrī, sēnsus sum: to be felt

Principal parts of model deponents

1 st Conj.	hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum: encourage
2 nd Conj.	vereor, verērī, veritus sum: fear
3 rd Conj.	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum: follow
3 rd -io Conj.	patior, patī, passus sum: suffer
4 th Conj.	partior, partīrī, partītus sum: share

- The first-conjugation verb in the table has regular principal parts. *Hortor* means “I encourage”; *hortārī*, “to encourage”; and *hortātus sum*, “I have encouraged.” We should know to change the *-us* to *-a* for a feminine subject or to *-um* for a neuter subject. For plural subjects, the endings are *-ī*, *-ae*, *-a*.
 - The lesson here is that when a verb’s principal parts appear in passive dress, that verb is deponent: passive in appearance, active in meaning.
 - We can generate the passive voice only for verbs that have active forms. If the active forms do not exist, what looks passive is active. Thus, when you look in a Latin dictionary, if you see principal parts that are strictly passive in form, the verb in question is a deponent.
 - What pattern can we use to identify the conjugation of first-conjugation deponents? Rather than *-ō* followed by *-āre*, we find *-or* followed by *-ārī*. That long *ā* remains the key to the conjugation.
- The second-conjugation deponent “to fear” has the principal parts *vereor*, “I fear”; *verērī*, “to fear”; and *veritus sum*, “I have feared.” Rather than *-eō* followed by *-ēre*, the second-conjugation deponents have *-eor* followed by *-ērī*.
- The fourth-conjugation verb “to share” has the principal parts *partior*, “I share”; *partīrī*, “to share”; and *partītus sum*, “I have shared.” Rather than *-iō* followed by *-īre*, we find *-ior* followed by *-īrī*.
- The third conjugation and third *-iō* are a little different from the first, second, and fourth conjugations because of the way in which we form the present passive infinitive. (N.B.: Although we form deponent infinitives in the same way we form passive infinitives, we must always remember that deponent look-alikes are active.)
 - As we saw when we formed the passive principal parts of our regular model verbs, the third conjugation drops the entire short *-ere* from the present active infinitive to form the present

passive infinitive. This has an impact on the pattern of the first two principal parts for third-conjugation deponents. The principal parts of the third-conjugation deponent “to follow” are *sequor*, “I follow”; *sequī*, “to follow”; and *secūtus sum*, “I have followed.”

- The third-conjugation deponent pattern is, thus, *-or* followed by *-ī* because it, too, is formed as if a short *-ere* has dropped out. And thus, a short *e* remains the characteristic vowel in the present-tense system; the present active deponent tense of *sequor*, *sequī* is formed just like the present passive of *pōnō*, *pōnere*.
- The principal parts of the third *-iō* deponent “to suffer” are *pator*, “I suffer”; *patī*, “to suffer”; and *passus sum*, “I have suffered.” Here, our pattern shows *-ior* followed by *-ī*, again, as if a short *-ere* has fallen away.

Model deponent verbs

Infinitive				
	Present	Perfect	Future	Future Passive
1st Conj. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum: urge	hortārī: to exhort	hortātus esse: to have exhorted	hortātūrus esse: to be going to exhort	
2nd Conj. vereor, verērī, veritus sum: fear	verērī: to fear	veritus esse: to have feared	veritūrus esse: to be going to fear	
3rd Conj. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum: follow	sequī: to follow	secūtus esse: to have followed	secūtūrus esse: to be going to follow	

3rd -io Conj. patior, patī, passus sum: suffer	patī: to suffer	passus esse: to have suffered	passūrus esse: to be going to suffer	
4th Conj. partior, partīrī, partītus sum: share	partīrī: to share	partītus esse: to have shared	partītūrus esse: to be going to share	
Participle				
1st Conj. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum: urge	hortāns: exhorting	hortātus: having exhorted	hortātūrus: going to exhort	hortandus: necessary to be exhorted
2nd Conj. vereor, verērī, veritus sum: fear	verēns: fearing	veritus: having feared	veritūrus: going to fear	verendus: necessary to be feared
3rd Conj. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum: follow	sequēns: following	secūtus: having followed	secūtūrus: going to follow	sequendus: necessary to be followed
3rd -io Conj. patior, patī, passus sum: suffer	patiēns: suffering	passus: having suffered	passūrus: going to suffer	patiendus: necessary to be suffered
4th Conj. partior, partīrī, partītus sum: share	partiēns: sharing	partītus: having shared	partītūrus: going to share	partiendus: necessary to be shared

Practicing conjugation

- Let's start by conjugating and translating "to fear" in the present active indicative.
 - I fear. *Vereor.*
 - You fear. *Verēris.*
 - He, she, or it fears. *Verētur.*
 - We fear. *Verēmur.*

- Y'all fear. *Verēminī*.
- They fear. *Verentur*.
- Notice that these forms look passive, but we translate actively.
- Let's now try the perfect, "I have feared." We'll need the third principal part, *veritus sum*.
 - I have feared. *Veritus sum*.
 - You have feared. *Veritus es*.
 - He has feared. *Veritus est*.
 - She has feared. *Verita est*.
 - It has feared. *Veritum est*.
 - We women have feared. *Veritae sumus*.
 - Y'all neutered ones have feared. *Verita estis*.
 - Those men have feared. *Veritī sunt*.
- Next, let's conjugate "to suffer" in the imperfect indicative.
 - I was suffering. *Patiēbar*.
 - You were suffering. *Patiēbāris*.
 - He, she, or it was suffering. *Patiēbātur*.
 - We were suffering. *Patiēbāmur*.
 - Y'all were suffering. *Patiēbāminī*.
 - They were suffering. *Patiēbantur*.

- There's a special trick to the imperfect subjunctive for deponents. As you may recall, for regular verbs, to form the imperfect subjunctive, both active and passive, we take the present active infinitive and add the personal endings *-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur*.
 - The problem when applying this rule to deponents is that the present active infinitive is passive in form.
 - We need to restore the infinitive to what would have been its active form if it existed, which it does not, and then add the passive endings.
 - For “exhort,” *hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum*, we change the second principal part from *hortārī* to *hortāre*, which does not exist on its own, and then add *-r, -ris, -tur, -mur, -minī, -ntur*, giving us: *hortārer, hortārēris, hortārētur, hortārēmur, hortārēminī, hortārentur*.
- This process is fairly straightforward for the second and fourth conjugations, as well. For second-conjugation “to fear,” *vereor, verērī, veritus sum*, we change the second principal part *verērī* to *verēre* and add the personal endings. For fourth-conjugation “to share,” *partior, partīrī, partītus sum*, we change the second principal part *partīrī* to *partīre* and add the personal endings.
- But the third conjugation requires a bit more in the way of mental gymnastics. If we take the deponent “to follow,” *sequor, sequī, secūtus sum*, how do we make the second principal part, *sequī*, look like the present active infinitive, which does not actually exist?
 - *Sequī*, as we discussed earlier, is equivalent in form to a third-conjugation present passive infinitive, which would have dropped the entire short *-ere* before adding *-ī*.
 - If we reverse-engineer *sequī*, we obtain the present active infinitive but imaginary equivalent *sequere*. This form does not exist in authentic Latin but does exist as a base onto which we attach the personal endings, yielding the imperfect active

subjunctive forms of the deponent verb *sequor*: *sequerem*, *sequerēris*, *sequerētur*, *sequerēmur*, *sequerēmini*, *sequerentur*.

- Let's also do the present active indicative for this verb. *Sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum* is third conjugation, characterized by a short “īh” sound in the present tense. This yields: *sequor*, *sequeris*, *sequitur*, *sequimur*, *sequimini*, *sequuntur*.

Semi-deponents

- If you look in a lexicon and find that the principal parts are half active and half passive, you are looking at a semi-deponent verb. Examples include:
 - *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*: dare
 - *gaudeō*, *gaudēre*, *gavīsus sum*: rejoice
 - *soleō*, *solēre*, *solitus sum*: be accustomed
 - *cōnfidō*, *cōnfidere*, *cōnfīsus sum*: trust in
- The second-conjugation verb “to dare,” *audeō*, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, is regular in the present-tense system (i.e., the three tenses formed from the first two principal parts, namely, the present, imperfect, and future), but it is deponent (i.e., passive in form but active in meaning) in the perfect tense system, namely, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect. How do we know this? Rather than an active third principal part and a fourth principal part, all we find is *ausus sum*, a dead giveaway of a semi-deponent.

Participles and infinitives

- Deponents, with one exception, have only active participles. Consider the verb “to speak” or “to converse.” The principal parts are *loquor*, *loquī*, *locūtus sum*. The participles are odd because they do include an active form, namely, the present participle. The present active participle, which is *loquēns*, is formed in the usual way, with *-ēns*, and is active in form and meaning. It means “speaking.”

- The past participle, which we can extract from the third principal part, is *locūtus*, -a, -um. But we translate *locūtus* actively as “having spoken.” This conforms to type for deponents. They look passive but are active in meaning.
- We can also form a future active participle, *locūtūrus*, -a, -um, which is active in both form and meaning, “going to speak.”
- Finally, we can form a future passive participle, which is passive in both form and meaning. And this is the exception. Future passive participles of deponents are passive. We add -endus to the present stem, giving us *loquendus*, -a, -um, and we translate “necessary to be spoken.”
- Infinitives are similarly a mixed bag. We have three tenses, present, perfect, and future. The present and perfect look like their passive equivalents: *loquī*, “to speak,” and *locūtus esse*, “to have spoken.” The future active infinitive, however, is active in form: *locūtūrus esse*, “to be going to speak.”

Verba

apud (prep. + acc.): with, at, among (compare the French preposition *chez*)

audeō, audēre, ausus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): dare

cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): trust in (takes dative object), have confidence in

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum: put down, lay aside

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): rejoice

gravis, grave: severe, serious, heavy, grievous

hortor, hortārī, hortātus, -a, -um sum (dep.): urge, encourage

loquor, loquī, locūtus, -a, -um sum (dep.): talk, speak

nōnne: interrogative adverb introducing questions that expect a “yes” answer
(*Nōnne mē amās?* = Don’t you love me?)

partior, partīrī, partītus, -a, -um sum (dep.): share

pator, patī, passus, -a, -um sum (dep.): suffer, endure

potēns, gen. potentis: mighty, powerful, strong

precor, precārī, precātus, -a, -um sum (dep.): pray, beg, entreat

prō (prep. + abl.): for, on behalf of, in front of, before

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum: seek, look for, strive for

sapiēns, gen. sapientis: wise, judicious

sequor, sequī, secūtus, -a, -um sum (dep.): follow

soleō, solēre, solitus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): be accustomed

vereor, verērī, veritus, -a, -um sum (dep.): fear, respect

Memoranda

Please review the passive conjugations of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentīō* (App. §57). Learn the corresponding active forms of our model deponents and semi-deponents (App. §§59–60).

Agenda

i. Conjugate the following deponent verbs in the tense and mood indicated.

1. hortor (present indicative)

2. sequor (present subjunctive)
 3. patior (imperfect indicative)
 4. precor (perfect indicative, assuming feminine subject)
 5. vereor (pluperfect subjunctive, assuming masculine subject)
- ii. Translate the following into Latin. Unless otherwise indicated, use the indicative mood.
1. I used to urge.
 2. We (feminine) have been accustomed.
 3. You (plural) will suffer.
 4. She had followed.
 5. He will have prayed.
 6. The leader urged (imperfect subjunctive).
 7. The women had urged (subjunctive).
 8. The boys shared (perfect subjunctive).
 9. Did you (singular feminine) rejoice?
 10. The soldiers had dared.
- iii. Please translate the following into English.
1. Pontificem maximum et sacrificiis studere et pro populo precari et deos deasque immortales colere necesse est.
 2. Hunc imperatorem potentem vereri debet.

3. Virōs miserōs sequī hae fēminae audācēs solitae nōn sunt.
4. Nōnne amīcīs tuīs cōnfīsus es?
5. Mīles quem quaeritis vulnera gravia passus est.
6. Cum omnibus urbis cīvibus haec dōna nova partīrī cupimus.
7. Epistulā scrīptā, agricola servum dīmīsīt.
8. Dīligāmus huius magistrī discipulōs discipulāsque sapientēs, quī apud eum disciplīnam linguae Latinae secūtī sunt.
9. Cum rēge herī loquēbātur soror tua. Quid dīcēbat?
10. Ducem colī cupientem nōn sequēmur.
11. Precātur senex, ut apud sē (hīm, acc.) hodiē cēnēs.
12. Nōs (us, acc.) semper hortābātur māter nostra ut sapientiam amārēmus et virtūtem quererēmus.

Conditional Sentences

Lecture 27

In the last lecture, we explored deponent verbs—those that look passive but act like active verbs. In this lecture, we will explore conditions. This will expand our knowledge of Latin syntax in general and our appreciation for the subjunctive in particular. Conditions in Latin have two clauses: an if-clause (*protasis*) and a then-clause (or a main clause [*apodosis*] or conclusion). Conditions come in many varieties—simple, general, real, unreal, mixed—to cover many contingencies. In this lecture, we'll review conditions in English and Latin, noting their names and classifications, as well as the moods and tenses of verbs in the two types of clauses.

Overview of conditions

- To appreciate the subtleties of clauses, we need to be confident in our verbs; thus, we'll begin with conjugation identification for two verbs: (1) “to fight,” *pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum* (first conjugation), and (2) “to conquer,” *vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum* (third conjugation).
- Knowing these verbs prepares us to look at a sample simple condition called the “present general”: *Sī Caesar pugnāt, vincit*. “If Caesar fights, he conquers.”
 - The if-clause is *sī Caesar pugnāt*, and the main clause or conclusion is just one word: *vincit*. Both clauses have verbs that are in the present tense indicative.
 - A present general condition offers us a general truth without any commitment as to whether or not the proposition is actually true. We do not know whether Caesar fights, but if he does, he conquers.
- Let's now make both verbs past. We can use the imperfect or perfect indicative: (1) *Sī Caesar pugnābat, vincēbat*; “If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering.” (2) *Sī Caesar pugnāvit, vīcīt*;

“If Caesar fought, he conquered.” By making the verbs past, we’ve simply shifted the present general condition into the past, thus generating a “past general condition.”

- Future conditions are classified as either more vivid or less vivid, referring to how likely we imagine the scenario. Those conditions we imagine as more imminent or likely to happen, we imagine more vividly. Those we imagine as more remote possibilities, we imagine less vividly.
 - Here’s an example of a future more vivid condition: *Sī Caesar pugnaverit, vincet*; “If Caesar will have fought, he will win.”
 - A future more vivid condition uses a future perfect indicative in the if-clause and a future indicative in the conclusion or main clause. In English, we’d be more likely to say, “If Caesar will fight, he will win,” or in American English, “If Caesar fights, he will win.”
 - We can make this more vivid future condition less vivid by shifting both clauses into the present tense subjunctive: *Sī Caesar pugnet, vincat*; “If Caesar should fight, he would win.”
 - How does the present subjunctive manage to refer to the future? Let’s follow the logic: If Caesar should fight (in the future), he would win (in the future). These conditions are sometimes called “should-would clauses.” Traditionally, the “should” goes into the if-clause, and the “would” goes into the conclusion or main clause, but again, American English no longer always observes the traditional rules.
- Unreal or contrary-to-fact conditions do not take place in either the present or the past. For example, if Caesar had fought in the past—but he didn’t—he would have won, but because he didn’t fight, he didn’t win.

- In Latin, both the present contrary-to-fact condition and the past contrary-to-fact condition employ the subjunctive mood, but these conditions require specific tenses of the subjunctive.
 - A past contrary-to-fact condition requires the pluperfect subjunctive in both the if-clause and the main clause: *Sī Caesar pugnāvisset, vīcisset*; “If Caesar had fought [but he did not], he would have conquered.”
 - A present contrary-to-fact condition uses the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnāret, vinceret*; “If Caesar were fighting [but he isn’t], he would be conquering.”
- We can also mix tenses of the subjunctive: *Sī Caesar pugnāvisset, vinceret*; “If Caesar had fought [in the past], he would be winning [in the present].” This is a “mixed condition.”

Review

- A present general condition has the present tense indicative in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnāt, vincit*; “If Caesar fights, he conquers.”
- A past general condition has the past tense indicative in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnāvit, vīcit*; “If Caesar fought, he conquered.”
- A future more vivid condition has a future perfect in the if-clause and a future in the main clause: *Sī Caesar pugnāverit, vincet*; “If Caesar will have fought, he will win,” or in colloquial English, “If Caesar fights, he will win.”
- A future less vivid condition has the present-tense subjunctive in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnet, vincat*; “If Caesar should fight, he would win.”
- A present contrary-to-fact condition has the imperfect subjunctive in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnāret, vinceret*; “If Caesar were fighting, he would win.”

- A past contrary-to-fact condition has the pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses: *Sī Caesar pugnāvisset, vīcisset*; “If Caesar had fought, he would have won.”

Quiz

Translate the following sentences and classify the conditions as general (present or past), future more vivid, future less vivid, or contrary to fact (present or past).

1. *Sī Lesbia Latīnē loquitur, Catullus laetus est.*
2. *Sī deī Latīnē loquantur, Rōmānī laetī sint.*
3. *Sī deī Latīnē locūtī erint, Rōmānī laetī erunt.*
4. *Sī Lesbia Latīnē loquerētur, Catullus laetus esset.*
5. *Sī Caesar Latīnē locūtus est, Rōmānī laetī erant.*
6. *Sī Lesbia Latīnē locūta esset, Catullus laetus fuisset.*

Answers: 1. “If Lesbia speaks Latin, Catullus is happy”; present general; 2. “If the gods should speak Latin, the Romans would be happy”; future less vivid; 3. “If the gods will have spoken Latin, the Romans will be happy” (or “If the gods speak Latin, the Romans will be happy”); future more vivid; 4. “If Lesbia were speaking Latin [but she’s not], Catullus would be happy”; present contrary to fact; 5. “If Caesar spoke Latin, the Romans were happy”; past general; 6. “If Lesbia had spoken Latin, Catullus would have been happy”; past contrary to fact.

Latin examples

- Our first example derives from an imperial handbook on Roman law and uses a present general condition to discuss one of the conditions under which one could gain Roman citizenship. The author does not talk about any case in particular but, instead, about what is generally true. *Sī uxor Latīnī cīvis Rōmāna est, quī ex eā nascitur, ... cīvis Rōmānus nascitur.* “If the wife of a

Latin is a Roman citizen, he who is born from her, ... is born a Roman citizen.”

- In his fourth speech against the conspirator Catiline, Cicero deploys a future more vivid condition to recommend tough love: *Sī vehementissimī fuerimus, misericordēs habēbimur*. “If we will have been extremely harsh, we will be considered merciful.” What Cicero means is: “If, going forward, we are extremely harsh in our policies toward the conspirators, we will be considered merciful toward the rest of society.”



© iStock/Thinkstock

- A past contrary-to-fact condition from Cicero’s second oration against Catiline gives us an idea of what he meant by “vehemence” (or “harshness”): *Sī interfectus esset, quid dicerent?* “If he [Catiline] had been killed, what would they [his supporters] be saying?” Cicero tries to make the case that although the Senate missed its opportunity in the past, it can still act harshly and not worry too much about public opinion. He uses a past contrary-to-fact if-clause to help the senators imagine what past consequences might have been in the present in order to help them gird themselves for future action.
- Finally, in his first oration against Catiline, Cicero speaks directly to the conspirator, using a future more vivid condition: *Sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē publicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus*. “If I

Under Roman law, Roman women who married non-Roman men enjoyed the status of citizenship, while their husbands did not.

shall have ordered you to be killed, there will remain in the republic the remaining band of conspirators.”

Verba

celer, celeris, celere: swift, quick

coniūrātī, coniūrātōrum, m.: conspirators

cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, n.: counsel, advice, plan, purpose

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum: believe

fās (indeclinable noun), n.: religious law

inānis, ināne: empty, vain

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: order, command

Latīnē (adv.): in Latin

manus, manūs (fourth declension), f.: hand, band

misericors, gen. misericordis: merciful, tenderhearted, compassionate

nascor, nascī, nātus, -a, -um sum: be born, arise

nisi: if ... not, unless

nōs, nostrum (personal pronoun; App. §40): we, us

post (prep. + acc.): after

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī pugnātum: fight

resideō, residēre, resēdī: remain, stay behind; reside, abide

sī (conj.): if

ultrā (prep. + acc.): beyond

uxor, uxōris, f.: wife

vehemēns, gen. *vehementis*: furious, violent, harsh, strong

verbum, verbī, n.: word

Memoranda

Please review the conjugations of the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentio* (App. §57).

Agenda

- i. Conjugate the following verbs in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.
 1. *pugnō* (imperfect active subjunctive)
 2. *nascor* (pluperfect indicative)
 3. *iubeō* (future perfect active indicative)
 4. *resideō* (future active indicative)
 5. *resideō* (present active subjunctive)
- ii. For each of the sentences below, identify the type of condition; then translate into Latin.
 1. If you (feminine singular) are happy, then I (masculine) am happy.
 2. If the soldiers had fought, they would have conquered.

3. If my father should come, I would rejoice.
4. If your (singular) friend were listening, he would understand.
5. If they stay behind (will have stayed behind), they will suffer.
6. If your (plural) brother stayed behind, he was captured.

iii. Please translate the following into English.

1. Sī cum imperātōre locutī eritis, nostra urbs misera nōn dēlēbitur.
2. Sī verba māt̄ris sapientis audīvissent, deōs coluissent illī puerī.
3. Sī fās deōrum nōn sequimur, inānis est vīta.
4. Sī celerī nāve vēnisset soror mea, apud poētā quem adōrat cēnāre herī potuisset.
5. Misericors esse hīc rēx solet; sī coniūrātōs interfēcit, habet cōnsilium, nisi errō.
6. Sī sōlem crās vīderimus, bonae deae sacrificium faciēmus.
7. Ancillīs in villā labōrentibus, post cēnam residēbit servus meus ut loquātur.
8. Crēdisne coniūrātōs Caesarem caesūrōs esse?
9. Ad locum, quod ultrā mare est, filiās tuās mittī iubēbō. Sī eās dīlēxeris, tū in hāc urbe residēbis.
10. Sī iste vehemēns lībertātem servāre cupiret, cōnsilium illīus senis audācis sequeretur atque mīlitēs ā nōbīs captōs uxōribus redderet.

Cum Clauses and Stipulations

Lecture 28

In the last lecture, we looked at conditions or if-then clauses, both indicative and subjunctive. In this lecture, we will continue to expand our syntactic range, looking in particular at provisos and temporal clauses, as well as at a few other types that we've seen before. Again, the good news is that there are no new forms to learn. Rather, we will look at a few conjunctions, learn their meanings, and then learn what to expect in terms of sequence and mood.

Clauses and the sequence of tenses

- What sometimes strikes students as difficult about clauses is the appearance of the subjunctive, which we do not use extensively in English. Roman authors, however, often used the subjunctive.
- When we talk about clauses, we generally refer to subordinate clauses, which cannot stand independently. A main clause could, of course, stand independently, but its meaning, thought, or logic requires the clarification provided by the subordinate clause. The main clause also exerts an influence on the sequence of tenses, because certain tenses of the subjunctive follow certain tenses of the indicative in the main clause.
- In subordinate clauses, present and perfect subjunctives follow present- and future-tense verbs in the main clause. The term “primary sequence” refers to present and future time in the main clause. Past tenses, in contrast, are secondary, and in “secondary sequence,” we find imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives in subordinate clauses.
- The easiest way to recognize provisos, concessive clauses, stipulations, conditions, temporal clauses, and others is to recognize the particles or conjunctions that introduce such clauses.

Clauses of proviso

- Clauses of proviso may be introduced by *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, or *tantum ut*. These may all be translated as “provided,” although we can translate them in other ways, too.
- When the emperor Caligula was told that he was hated, he replied with a famous quote from a Latin tragedy: *Ōderint, dum metuant*; “Let them hate, provided they fear.” Both the main clause and the subordinate clause are in the subjunctive.
 - The first verb in this quote has odd principal parts: *ōdī, ōdisse*. This verb is so “defective” that the present-tense forms do not exist, and the perfect-tense forms are used in place of the present. This is the reason that a perfect subjunctive, *ōderint*, is translated as a hortatory subjunctive in the present tense: “Let them hate.”
 - Note that *dum*, when used to stipulate provisos, takes the subjunctive. The principal parts of the verb “to fear” are: *metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum*; thus, we have a third-conjugation verb whose present-tense subjunctive will be characterized by the vowel *a*, and indeed, *metuant* is a present-tense subjunctive.
 - What about the sequence of tenses? Latin uses the present and perfect subjunctives after present, future, and future perfect verbs in the main clause, but *ōderint*, “let them hate,” is in the perfect tense. Did Caligula make an error in the sequence of tenses? The answer is no. Although *ōderint* is perfect in form, Latin uses it with a present-tense meaning; thus, Caligula follows the sequence quite logically: A present subjunctive in the subordinate clause follows a present idea in the main clause.
- Without the subjunctive, *dum* can simply refer to time, meaning “while.” Here’s an example from Cicero: *Ita vīvunt, dum possunt*. “Thus they live, while they can.” Without the subjunctive, there is no proviso.

- Here's another example from Cicero, this time, with a subjunctive. Cicero says that he is willing to be blamed for Catiline's expulsion from the Senate under one condition: *Dicātur* [Catilīna] *ēiectus esse* *ā* *mē*, *dum modo* *eat* in exsilium; "Let Catiline be said to have been thrown out by me, provided only he go into exile."
 - *Dicātur* is a third-conjugation present-tense passive hortatory subjunctive: "Let him be said." *Ēiectus esse* is a perfect passive infinitive: "to have been thrown out."
 - *Dum modo* is a more emphatic form of *dum*, meaning "provided only," which takes the subjunctive *eat*, a present-tense subjunctive form of *eō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītum*, meaning "go."

Concessive, temporal, and causal clauses

- The word *cum*, when used as a preposition with the ablative, means "with," as in "with the highest praise," *summa cum laude*. When used as a conjunction, *cum* can mean "whenever" with the indicative or "although, when, or since" if used with the subjunctive. These subjunctive uses of *cum* can be further classified as "concessive" (when *cum* means "although"), "temporal" (when *cum* means "when"), or "causal" (when *cum* means "since" or "inasmuch as").
- We can tell what *cum* may mean in any given instance with the subjunctive by trying out the possibilities and deciding which one makes the most sense. For example, consider the following sentence: *Cum Caesar nōn pugnet, vincit*. The translation that seems to make the most sense is: "Although Caesar does not fight, he conquers."
- We can also use this simple example to illustrate the sequence of tenses. The main clause in the sentence is one word—*vincit*, "he conquers," a present-tense verb. *Vincit* establishes what's called "primary sequence." In primary sequence, subjunctives in subordinate clauses must be either present or perfect tense. And, indeed, *pugnet* is a present-tense subjunctive.

- The perfect subjunctive is also possible for primary sequence: *Cum Caesar nōn pugnāverit, vincit*; “Although Caesar did not fight, he is conquering.”
- If we make the tense of the main verb past, that puts the clause in “secondary sequence,” which requires either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive in the subordinate clause: *Cum Caesar nōn pugnāret, vīcit*; “Although Caesar was not fighting, he conquered.” Here, we see the perfect indicative *vīcit* in the main clause and the imperfect subjunctive *pugnāret* in the subordinate clause.
- A past-tense verb in the main clause can also be accompanied by a pluperfect subjunctive in the subordinate clause: *Cum Caesar nōn pugnāvisset, vīcit*; “Although Caesar had not fought, he conquered.”
- Note, too, that unlike the proviso clause, the translation of *cum* clauses betrays no hint of the subjunctive in English. If it weren’t for the indicative use of *cum*, we wouldn’t have to think about the subjunctives at all. In the sentence *Cum Caesar pugnat, vincit*, the *a* in *pugnat* tells us that it’s indicative, and when we see a verb in the indicative, we translate *cum* as “whenever”: “Whenever Caesar fights, he conquers.” We can do this in the past, as well: *Cum Caesar pugnābat, vīcit*; “Whenever Caesar fought, he won.”
- There are other ways to form concessive clauses besides using *cum* with the subjunctive. *Quamvis, ut, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiam si*, and *quamquam* can all be used to mean “although,” “granting that,” “even if,” and the like. Some of these take the indicative: *Etsi Caesar nōn pugnāverat, vīcit*; “Even if Caesar had not fought, he conquered.” *Etsi*, for example, can be used with the indicative.
- We do not need to know all the specific words used to introduce clauses. What’s important to remember is that concessive, causal,

proviso, conditional, purpose, result, and fear clauses can all take the subjunctive.

Purpose, result, and fear clauses

- Inasmuch as result can derive from purpose, context is sometimes required to sort one from the other. Let's begin with positive purpose in secondary, that is, past-tense, sequence. *Ut* plus subjunctive can indicate purpose: *Caesar pugnāvit, ut vinceret*; "Caesar fought so that he might conquer," or "Caesar fought in order to conquer."
- If result rather than purpose was intended, Roman authors frequently added adverbs to spell things out more clearly: *Caesar tam ācritēr pugnāvit, ut facile vinceret*; "Caesar fought so *fiercely* that he *easily* conquered."
- Negative purpose and negative result are easier to distinguish because they do not share a construction. Negative purpose is introduced by *nē* plus the subjunctive, and negative result is introduced by *ut nōn* plus the subjunctive. Compare: *Caesar nōn pugnāvit, nē vinceret* ("Caesar did not fight so he would not conquer") with *Caesar nōn pugnāvit, ut nōn vinceret* ("Caesar did not fight, with the result that he did not conquer").
- Fear clauses may best be understood as fears about one's intended purpose. A common verb for expressing fear in Latin is the deponent *vereor*. *Caesar verēbātur* would mean "Caesar was afraid" or "Caesar feared." The sentence *Caesar verēbātur ut vinceret* means "Caesar was afraid about whether he would conquer," that is, he was afraid that he would not conquer.
- The Roman statesman Pompey did not want Caesar to win: *Pompēius verēbātur nē Caesar vinceret*; "Pompey was afraid, lest Caesar conquer," that is, Pompey was afraid that Caesar would conquer.
 - This construction may be counterintuitive in English if we simply look at the individual words: *Caesar verēbātur ut vinceret* ("Caesar was afraid he would not conquer") versus



© iStock/Thinkstock

Hannibal led the forces of Carthage in a great victory against Rome during the Second Punic War.

Pompēius verēbātur nē Caesar vinceret (“Pompey was afraid Caesar would conquer”).

- But the fear is whether one’s purpose will come to pass. *Caesar verēbātur ut vinceret*; “Caesar, whose purpose was he should conquer [*ut vinceret*], was afraid [that he would not]. *Pompēius verēbātur nē Caesar vinceret*; “Pompey, whose purpose was that Caesar should not conquer [*nē Caesar vinceret*], was afraid that Caesar would.”
- When you encounter *ut* or *nē* after a verb of fearing, translate these little words as the opposite of what our English-speaking brains might expect. Using “whether” for *ut* and “lest” for *nē* can also help.

***Ut* and *nē* in action**

- The following example derives from Valerius Maximus’s *Facta et dicta memorabilia*, or *Memorable Deeds and Sayings*, and illustrates the religiosity of the Roman Senate after the general

Hannibal inflicted a devastating defeat on Rome at Cannae during the Second Punic War. Valerius writes: *Senātus post Cannēnsem clādem dēcrēvit, nē mātṛōnae ultrā trīcēsimum diem lūctūs suōs extenderent, utī ab hīs sacra Cerēris peragī possent.*

- Our translation reads: “The Senate after the disaster at Cannae decreed, that the matrons beyond the thirtieth day should not extend their mourning, so that by them the sacred rites of Ceres could be conducted.”
- Because the gods were not mortal, anything associated with death, such as mourning, offended them. And no person polluted by mourning could conduct the rites of an immortal goddess. But Cannae inflicted mourning on most Roman households; for this reason, the Senate decreed a limit on mourning so that the immortal gods could receive their due ceremonies. And that, in the opinion of most Romans, is why the gods blessed Rome repeatedly with military victories.

Verba

clādēs, clādis, f.: destruction, defeat, disaster

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum: decide, decree

diēs, diēī, m. (fifth declension): day

dum (conj.): while, as long as, provided that

dummodo (conj.): provided that, as long as

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum: throw out, drive out

eō, īre, īvī, ītum: go

etsī (conj.): even if, although

exsilium, exsilī, n.: banishment, exile

metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum: fear, dread

nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, nequītum: be unable, not to be able (generally used where we might expect *nōn possum*)

ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb, with perfect-system forms and present-tense meaning): hate

peragō, peragere, perēgī, peractus: complete, carry out, accomplish

pūniō, pūnīre pūnīvī, pūnītum: punish

quamvīs (conj.): although

suī (gen.), sibi (dat.), sē, sē (reflexive pronoun): him/her/it/them; himself/herself/itself/themselves (in reference to the main subject)

suus, sua, suum (reflexive possessive): his/her/its/their own (in reference to the main subject)

tam (adv., often introducing result clause): so, to such a degree

tantus, tanta, tantum: so large, so great

Memoranda

Please review the conjugations of *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Agenda

i. Conjugate the following verbs in the tense, voice, and mood indicated.

1. metuō (pluperfect active indicative)

2. ēiciō (future passive indicative)
3. pugnō (present active subjunctive)
4. peragō (imperfect passive subjunctive)
5. dēcernō (perfect active subjunctive)

ii. Please translate the following into English.

1. Cum legiōnēs nostrae pugnant, vinct.
2. Cum legiōnēs vestrae pugnent, illum populum audācem vincere nequeunt.
3. Rēs pūblica servārī potest, dum istōs contrā eam coniūrantēs dēleātis.
4. Hominēs sē (= him, acc., in reference to the main speaker, i.e., Caesar) ōdisse posse dīcit Caesar, dummodo sē metuunt.
5. Hominēs eum (i.e., in reference to someone other than the main speaker) ōdisse posse dīcit Caesar, dummodo eum metuunt.
6. Fīliōs suōs sē (= her, acc., in reference to the main speaker, i.e., māter mea) ōdisse posse dīcit māter mea, dummodo sē metuunt.
7. Caesarem sē (= them, acc., in reference to the main speaker, i.e., cīvēs līberī) ōdisse posse dīcunt cīvēs līberī, dummodo sē metuunt.
8. Bene vīvere nequīmus dum clādem metuimus.
9. Dēcrēvit senātus ut illī imperātōrēs sacrificia peragerent.
10. Librōs multōs legēbāmus ut laudārēmur.
11. Dīmitte puerum nē haec mala audiat.

12. Doctrīnam magistrae suae discipula sapiēns sequitur ut in lūce vērītātis linguaeque Latīnae vīvat.
13. Dōnīs acceptīs, tam laetus erat puer ut patrī suō multa bāsia daret.
14. Tantā cum virtūte locūta est ancilla ut eam pūnīre nōn audēret virgō sevēra.
15. Duce sapientī in exsilium ēiectō, verentur cīvēs nē omnēs virī bonī in urbe suā capiantur.

Reading Excerpts from Roman Law

Lecture 29

In the last two lectures, we have looked at a variety of clauses, including conditions, stipulations, provisos, *cum* clauses, and purposes. In this lecture, we will use our refined skills in Latin syntax to examine some examples of Roman legislation from the 5th century B.C.E. to the 6th century C.E. Rome's continuous legal tradition across a millennium continues to serve as the basis of continental European law and to inform the legal tradition of Latin America and the law of the State of Louisiana. The rest of the United States takes its start from English Common Law, but English and American legal traditions have not entirely escaped the influence of Roman law, for both good and ill.

Struggles of the Roman plebeians

- One of the great stories in the endless struggle for human freedom, justice, and dignity was the struggle of the Roman plebeians against their rulers, a hereditary class called the patricians. And one of the greatest and lasting victories achieved by the plebeians was the codification of Roman law.
- Plebeian pressure succeeded in compelling the first codification of Roman law, which was, in the 450s B.C.E., inscribed first on 10 bronze *tabulae*, or tablets. Another two *tabulae* were added for a total of 12, which were then set up for public display. This first codification is commonly called the Twelve Tables of Roman Law. Unfortunately, only a few fragments have survived.
- Among the fragments of the fourth Table of Roman Law, we find this mixed condition: *Sī pater filium ter vēnum duit, filius ā patre liber estō*. Translated, the sentence reads: "If a father should sell his son three times, then the son shall be free from the father."
 - In Roman law a *pater familiās* remained the head of his household until he died, and his sons, no matter how old, whether they lived with him or not, remained a part of his



© iStock/Thinkstock

Legal proceedings, along with public meetings and entertainments, were held in the Roman Forum.

extended *familia*. The father's power included, in earlier Roman law, the *iūs occidendī*, literally, “the law of killing,” or the right to kill a son for disobedience and the right to sell a son into slavery, if, for example, the father needed to pay off his debts.

- But there was some relief for the son: If his father sold him three times, and he worked off the debt, he was, upon satisfying his father's debt for the third time, emancipated from his father's household.
- Another example derives from the tenth Table of Roman Law: *Hominem mortuum in urbe nē sepelītō nēve ūritō*; “Thou shalt not bury nor shalt thou burn a dead man in the city [of Rome].” The plebeians sometimes broke this law: For example, carried away by emotion, they burned the corpse of Julius Caesar in the Forum and

burned down the Senate house in the process, thus providing a good example of why the law was necessary in the first place.

Roman marital law

- The jurist named Gaius flourished in the 2nd century A.D. According to the 24th book of Justinian's 6th-century-A.D. *Digest of Roman Law*, Gaius was the source of the words a husband used to divorce his wife: *In repudiis autem, id est rēnūntiātiōne, comprobāta sunt haec verba: "tuās rēs tibi habētō"; item haec: "tuās rēs tibi agitō."*
 - Marriage, we might note, was complex, but ending a marriage was relatively simple, insofar as husbands and wives kept their property in separate accounts, and the husband was required to return all property brought into the marriage by his wife. To end a marriage, the husband simply had to speak the words that Gaius had written.
 - Translated, Gaius's formulation reads: In casting off, however, that is, in renouncing, these words have been approved of: "Thou shalt have your things for yourself!"; likewise these: "Thou shalt do your things for yourself!" (i.e., you will receive your property and have to conduct your affairs on your own).
- In early Roman law, it was illegal for a husband and wife to give each other gifts, and it was certainly discouraged even as late as the 6th century A.D., as we read in Justinian's *Digest*.
 - The 3rd-century-A.D. jurist Ulpian is quoted as stating: *Mōribus apud nōs receptum est, nē inter virum et uxōrem dōnātiōnēs valērent*. Our translation reads: "According to the customs among us it was received [or we took it upon ourselves] that gifts between a husband and wife were not valid."
 - The jurist goes on to explain that husbands and wives need to keep their property in separate accounts. Gifts would muddle the ledgers.

Verba

apud (prep. + acc.): among, at the house of

autem: however, moreover

comprobō, comprobāre, comprobāvī, comprobātum: approve, sanction

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum: believe, trust (takes dative object)

familia, familiae, f.: family, household (*pater familiās* = father of the household; head of a Roman family)

inter (prep. + acc.): between, among

item: likewise

iūs, iūris, n.: law, especially human law (as opposed to *fās*: divine law)

mendācium, mendāciī, n.: lie, falsehood, fiction

morior, morī, mortuus sum: die

mortuus, mortua, mortuum: dead

mōs, mōris, m.: custom, habit, manner, practice

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum: receive, admit, regain

repudium, repudiī, n.: casting off, divorce

sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultum: bury

terra, terrae, f.: earth, ground, land

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustum: burn

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrum: be strong, have power, be valid; be well, fare well

-ve (conjunction added to end of word): or

Memoranda

Please learn the future active imperatives of *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57).

Notā bene: Although rare, future passive imperatives exist. As you may observe in the complete charts of our model verbs, we form the future passive imperatives that do exist by adding an *r* to the corresponding future active imperative. We can do this for the second- and third-person singular and the third-person plural (but not the second-person plural).

Agenda

i. Translate the following future active imperatives.

1. Ūritō!
2. Nē sepeliuntō!
3. Habetōte!
4. Nē comprobātō!
5. Recipiuntō!
6. Estōte!
7. Suntō!

ii. And if you care to try your hand at future passive imperatives, translate the following.

8. Ūritor!
9. Nē sepeliuntor!
10. Nē comprobātor!
11. Recipiuntor!

iii. Please translate the following into English.

1. Sī corpus usserint, pūnientur.
2. Apud nōs mortuī in terrā sepeliuntur.
3. Sī valēs, valeō.
4. Vītam pulchram mortuōs actūrōs esse dīxit māter nostra.
5. Cum ignēs suōs nōn exstinguerent, mīlitēs ē nāve magnā venientēs vidēre potuī.
6. Cum dux mortuus esset, clādem nōn metuēbant illī cīvēs fortēs.
7. Mōrēs illīus populī antīquī comprobāre nōn dēbēs.
8. Haec rēs tam gravis ā dominō habētur ut requīrat mortem frātris meī.
9. Repudiō peractō, vītam novam sibi (to her, dat.; App. §41) grātissimam futūram esse scrīpsit mulier.
10. Sī lūcēs in eā villā vīdissem, huius senis mendāciīs nōn crēdidissem.
11. Nē virum bonum fidēlemve quaerāmus inter coniūrātōs.
12. Dēcrēvit imperātor ut poēta vīvere posset, dum vērītātem dē bellīs suīs scrībere dēsineret.

Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns

Lecture 30

In the last lecture, we read Roman law and encountered otherwise rare future imperatives. In this lecture, we will ask a number of questions, both direct and indirect. Direct questions are like statements; they use the indicative mood of the verb. Indirect questions, in contrast, require the subjunctive mood. We will also learn interrogative pronouns and interrogative adjectives, as well as words that we can use to ask questions and coordinate answers.

Asking questions

- In English, we can ask a question using a question word, such as “how,” or we can put a verb at the beginning of the question. In older English, a speaker could put a simple form of the verb out front, but modern English prefers a form of “do” or “to be.”
 - Consider these three statements: He does swim. He is swimming. He swims. If we turn these statements into questions, two of them will strike the modern ear as regular or idiomatic formulations: Does he swim? Is he swimming?
 - The third possible question sounds odd but would have been perfectly idiomatic in older English: Swims he?
- Latin, too, has idiomatic ways of forming questions. There are three small particles in Latin that can introduce questions: *-ne*, *nōne*, and *num*. *Nōne* and *num* stand as the first word in a question, while *-ne* is attached to the end of the first word of the question.
- Let’s look first at a simple statement and then formulate three questions using these question words to explore the nuances each implies. The statement is: *Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt*; “The Romans conquered the Gauls.” From this statement, we can formulate three simple questions: *Gallōsne Rōmānī vīcērunt?* *Nonne Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt?* *Num Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt?*

- *Gallōsne vīcērunt Rōmānī?* translates to “Did the Romans conquer the Gauls?” This is a neutral way of asking a question. The interrogator does not presume to know the answer. The ending *-ne* attached to the first word introduces a neutral and straightforward question.
- *Nōnne*, however, expects yes for an answer. It’s the equivalent of making a statement in English and adding “didn’t they?” as a prompt at the end.
- *Num* does just the opposite; it prompts the listener to respond no. In English, we can reformulate the question to compel a negative response by making the statement negative and adding an incredulous “did they?” at the end: “The Romans didn’t conquer the Gauls, did they?”
- What if a speaker wants to ask a double question? Did the Romans conquer Gaul, or did the Gauls conquer the Romans? Latin uses *utrum ... an*: *Utrum Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt an Gallī Rōmānōs vīcērunt?* A shorter way to ask this double question would be: Did the Romans conquer the Gauls **or not**? In this case, Latin would simply add *necne*, “or not,” to the end, while *utrum* would signal that the question had two parts: *Utrum Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt necne?*

Interrogative adjectives and pronouns

- Latin has a host of other question words, and among the most important sets are the interrogative adjectives and pronouns.
- Fortunately, if you remember the declension of the relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod*, you already know the forms of the interrogative adjective. The interrogative adjective and relative pronoun are identical in all forms: *Quī homō?* “What man?” *Quae mulier?* “What woman?” *Quod bellum?* “What war?”
- The interrogative pronoun is used only in the singular, and it differs from the singular forms of the relative pronoun in three places, the

nominative masculine, nominative neuter, and accusative neuter, and in the fact that there are no separate feminine singular forms. The masculine singular is used for both masculine and feminine forms in the singular.

Singular		
	Masculine & Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	quis	quid
Genitive	cuius	cuius
Dative	cui	cui
Accusative	quem	quid
Ablative	quō	quō

- Examples:
 - *Quis Gallōs vīcīt?* “Who conquered the Gauls?” Answer: *Rōmānī Gallōs vīcērunt.*
 - *Quem Rōmānī vīcērunt?* “Whom did the Romans conquer?” Answer: *Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt.*
 - *Quid ēgērunt Rōmānī?* “What did the Romans do?” Answer: *Rōmānī Gallōs vīcērunt.*

Other question words

- Besides interrogative adjectives and pronouns, Latin has many words that introduce a question. These words include *quantus*, “how great, how much, or how many”; *quālis*, “what sort of”; *ubi*, “where”; *quō*, “to what place”; *quā*, “by what route”; *unde*, “from what source”; *quandō*, “when”; *quot*, “how many”; and *quotiēns*, “how often.”
- Examples:
 - *Quantōs Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt?* “How many Gauls did the Romans conquer?” One possible answer: *Multōs Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt.* “The Romans conquered many Gauls.”

- *Quālēs Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt?* “What sort of Gauls did the Romans conquer?” One possible answer: *Rōmānī vīcērunt Gallōs nōbilēs et fortēs*. “The Romans conquered noble and brave Gauls.”
- *Ubi Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt?* “Where did the Romans conquer the Gauls?” Answer: *Gallōs Rōmānī vīcērunt in Galliā*. “The Romans conquered the Gauls in Gaul.”
- Many of these interrogatives have corresponding demonstratives, relatives, and more. Because they correspond or correlate with each other, we call them “correlatives.” The following table shows the more common correlatives. One fun feature is that they frequently rhyme or at least sound similar.

Interrogative	Relative	Demonstrative
quis? (who?)	quī (who)	is (that)
quantus? (how great, how much?)	quantus (how great, as)	tantus (so great, as great)
quālis? (of what sort?)	quālis (as)	tālis (such [sort])
ubi? (where?)	ubi (where)	ibi (there)
quō? (to what place? whither?)	quō (to which place, whither)	eō (to that place, thither)
quā? (by which way?)	quā (by which way)	eā (by that way)
unde? (from what source? whence?)	unde (from which source, whence)	inde (from that source, thence)
quandō? (when?)	cum (when)	tum (then)
quot? (how many?)	quot (as, i.e., “as many times as”)	tot (so many, as many)

Interrogative	Relative	Demonstrative
quotiēns? (how often?)	quotiēns (as, i.e., “as often as”)	totiēns (so often, as often)

Direct and indirect questions

- Direct questions are just that, direct and straightforward. Indirect questions and correlatives offer a few complications.
- An indirect question can be a reported question. For instance, Molinarius might ask, “Who conquered the Gauls?” And someone else might ask you, “What did Molinarius ask?” You would then report indirectly: “Molinarius asked who conquered the Gauls.” Your statement contains an indirect question even though it answers a question. In English, no adjustment of mood is required, but indirect questions in Latin require the subjunctive—and observation of the sequence of tenses.
- Here’s a direct question: *Quis Gallōs vīcit?* “Who conquered the Gauls?” Let’s see what happens in present tense or primary sequence versus past tense or secondary sequence.
 - The tense of the main verb determines the sequence. If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause can be present or perfect. If the tense of the main verb is past, the tense of the subjunctive in the subordinate clause will be imperfect or pluperfect.
 - Here’s another example: *Molinārius rogat quis Gallōs vīcerit.* “Molinarius is asking who conquered the Gauls.” The conquering took place before the asking; thus, the asking takes place in the present, and we use the perfect subjunctive in primary sequence.
 - Compare the preceding statement with this: “Molinarius was asking who had conquered the Gauls.” Normally, in English, we could ignore the niceties of the sequence, but Latin is

stricter. Inasmuch as the conquering took place before the asking, we indicate this by shifting the subordinate verb back a notch to time before the past time represented by the past tense in the main verb. That's the job of the pluperfect, and because it's an indirect question, we use the subjunctive: *Molinārius rogābat quis Gallōs vīcisset*.

- What if the subordinate clause takes place at the same time as the main verb? Let's use Cicero as our interrogator. What is Cicero asking in primary sequence? *Cīcerō rogat quis Gallōs vīcat*. After a present indicative, we use a present subjunctive to indicate simultaneity. "Cicero asks who is conquering the Gauls." In secondary sequence, the imperfect subjunctive is used to indicate simultaneity: *Cīcerō rogāvit quis Gallōs vinceret*. "Cicero asked who was [at that time] conquering the Gauls." We follow the perfect *rogāvit* with the imperfect subjunctive *vinceret*.

Questions from Catullus

- Catullus addresses his eighth poem to himself. The poem basically begins with a pep talk. Because Lesbia has dropped him, Catullus tells himself not to be a fool and to toughen up. But toward the end of the poem, he asks Lesbia this series of questions:

Scelesta, vae tē, quae tibi manet vīta?

Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?

Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?

Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?

- Our translation reads:

Oh, wicked one, woe is you! What life remains for you?

Who will now approach you? To whom will you seem beautiful?

Whom will you now love? Whose will you be said to be?

Whom will you kiss? Whose little lips will you bite?

Cicero's first oration against Catiline

- Cicero's first oration against the conspirator Catiline (63 B.C.E.) begins with a famous series of questions. His first question is: *Quō usque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā?* "To what extent will you continuously at length abuse our patience, O Catiline?"
- The next few questions were, in the larger context of the speech, originally indirect; rendered as direct questions in the perfect indicative, they read: *Quid proximā nocte ēgistī? Quid superiōre nocte ēgistī? Ubi fuistī? Quōs convocāvistī? Quid cōsiliū cēpistī?* "What did you do last night? What did you do the previous night? Where were you? What men did you call together? What sort of plan did you adopt?"

Verba

abūtor, abūtī, abūsus sum: abuse, misuse

adeō, adīre, adī, aditum: go to, approach

bāsiō, bāsiāre, bāsiāvī, bāsiātum: kiss

bellus, bella, bellum: beautiful, pretty, handsome

crūdēlis, crūdēle: cruel

eō: to that place, thither

fēlix, gen. fēlicis: happy, fortunate

ibi: there

inde: thence

mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus: bite

num: interrogative adverb introducing questions that expect a “no” answer

nunc: now

quā: by which route?, where?

quālis, quāle: what sort of?

quandō: when?

quantus, quanta, quantum: how large?, how great?, how much?, how many?

quī, quae, quod (interrogative adjective): what?, which?, what kind of?
(forms match those of the relative pronoun)

quis, quid (interrogative pronoun): who?, what?, which?

quō: to what place?, whither?

quot: how many?

quotiēns: how often?

scelestus, scelesta, scelestum: wicked, accursed

tālis, tāle: such, of such a sort

tandem: at length, at last, finally

ubi: where?

unde: from what source?, whence?

utrum ... an: whether ... or

vae tē: woe is you

Memoranda

Please learn the forms of the interrogative pronoun *quis, quid* (App. §47) and review the forms of the relative pronoun *quī, quae, quod*, which also serve as the interrogative adjective (App. §46).

Agenda

i. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. What have you (singular) done?
2. Whom does she love?
3. To whom will I give the money?
4. Whose daughter is that girl?
5. Who drank the wine?
6. What leader will wage war?
7. By what cruel master was this slave killed?
8. Into which field did they run?
9. For which happy girl are you (singular) cutting flowers?
10. What city are we approaching?
11. How many cities did the Romans conquer?
12. What sort of enemies did Caesar conquer?

ii. Please translate the following into English.

1. Quō currunt hī laetī? Quid audīvērunt? Num Caesar urbem adit ipse?
2. Quid illā nocte agēbātis, discipulī discipulaeque? Utrum vīnum cum vestrīs amīcīs linguam Latīnam amantibus bibēbātis an deōs deāsque immortālēs maximō cum pontifice colēbātis?
3. Puerum bellum dē quō loqueris vidēre nequeō. Ubi est?
4. Quālis ignis erat? Tālis erat ut omnēs ancillae fugerent totaque villa dēlērētur.
5. Quī stultus tantīs mendāciīs crēdet? Nōne crēdis mātrem tuam vērītatem crētūram esse?
6. Imperātor noster rogābat unde hae nāvēs magnae vēnissent.
7. Uxōre ab imperātōre interfectā, amīcōs suōs rogābit vir territū cui cōnfidere dēbeat.
8. Rēx tam scelestus est ut filiam suam in exsilium ēicī iubeat.
9. Cuius cōnsiliō puerum pūnis? Es misericors, domina! Maneat cum mātre suā!
10. Vae tē! Sī mortem huius cīvis bonī quaesīveris, cui crūdēlis nōn vidēberis?

Fourth- and Fifth-Declension Nouns

Lecture 31

We began this course with third-declension nouns because the third declension alerts us to the crucial importance of the genitive case. We cannot decline a noun unless we know the declension to which it belongs and unless we can determine the stem or base onto which we will place the endings of that declension. As you recall, the first declension has a genitive ending in *-ae*; the second, in long *-ī*; and the third, in short *-is*. In this lecture, we'll look at the fourth and fifth declensions, whose endings are similar to the declensions we already know. The genitive singular of the fourth declension is a long *-ūs*, pronounced "oos," and the genitive singular of the fifth declension is *-eī*, pronounced "eh-ee."

Fourth-declension endings, masculine and feminine

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-us	-ūs
Genitive	-ūs	-uum
Dative	-uī	-ibus
Accusative	-um	-ūs
Ablative	-ū	-ibus

Declension of *manus* (fourth-declension feminine noun)

manus, manūs, f.: hand, band, gang

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	manus	manūs
Genitive	manūs	manuum
Dative	manuī	manibus
Accusative	manum	manūs
Ablative	manū	manibus

Declension of *senātus* (fourth-declension masculine noun)*senātus, senātūs, m.: senate*

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	senātus	senātūs
Genitive	senātūs	senātuum
Dative	senātuī	senātibus
Accusative	senātum	senātūs
Ablative	senātū	senātibus

Fourth-declension endings, neuter

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ū	-ua
Genitive	-ūs	-uum
Dative	-ū	-ibus
Accusative	-ū	-ua
Ablative	-ū	-ibus

Declension of *cornū* (fourth-declension neuter noun)*cornū, cornūs, n.: horn*

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	cornū	cornua
Genitive	cornūs	cornuum
Dative	cornū	cornibus
Accusative	cornū	cornua
Ablative	cornū	cornibus

Fifth-declension endings (masculine and feminine)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ēs	-ēs
Genitive	-eī	-ērum
Dative	-eī	-ēbus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-ē	-ēbus

Declension of *rēs* (fifth-declension noun)*rēs, reī*, f.: thing, affair

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	rēs	rēs
Genitive	reī	rērum
Dative	reī	rēbus
Accusative	rem	rēs
Ablative	rē	rēbus

Declension of *diēs* (fifth-declension noun)*diēs, diēī*, m. or f.: day

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	diēs	diēs
Genitive	diēī	diērum
Dative	diēī	diēbus
Accusative	diem	diēs
Ablative	diē	diēbus

Declensions compared

	1 st M & F	2 nd		3 rd		4 th		5 th M & F
		M&F	N	M&F	N	M&F	N	
Singular								
Nominative	-a	-us or -(e)r	-um	**		-us	-ū	-ēs
Genitive	-ae	-ī		-is		-ūs		-eī
Dative	-ae	-ō		-ī		-uī	-ū	-eī
Accusative	-am	-um		-em	**	-um	-ū	-em
Ablative	-ā	-ō		-e or -ī		-ū		-ē
Plural								
Nominative	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-(i)a	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Genitive	-ārum	-ōrum		-(i)um		-uum		-ērum
Dative	-īs	-īs		-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus
Accusative	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-(i)a	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Ablative	-īs	-īs		-ibus		-ibus		-ēbus

- Despite the variety we see in nominative singular endings, there are some patterns. We do not find any diphthongs, for example, in the nominative singular. Note, too, that the verb will tell you what number the nominative will be, i.e., whether you should look for a singular or plural subject.
- There is less variety on display in the genitive singular. We have five declensions and only five possibilities: *-ae*, *-ī*, *-is*, *-ūs*, or *-eī*.

- The dative singular offers six possibilities, although the fourth-declension neuter really has no ending. The true dative singular endings are *-ae*, *-ō*, *-ī*, *-uī*, or *-eī*. Notice that three of them end in a long *ī*.
- If an ending exists in the accusative singular (in other words, for all masculine and feminine singular nouns), we find *-am*, *-um*, or *-em*. Neuters are a wild card, but they do repeat their nominatives.
- The ablative singular reveals *-ā*, *-ō*, *-ē*, *-ī*, *-ū*, *-ē*. We tend to find open vowels in the ablative singular and not a single diphthong or *-m*.
- The nominative plural is once again a bit more complex, but keep in mind that the verb helps us determine the number of the subject. Possible endings include first-declension *-ae*; second-declension long *ī*; third- and fifth-declension masculine and feminine *-ēs*; fourth-declension masculine and feminine *-ūs*; and second-, third-, and fourth-declension neuter *-a*.
- The genitive plural shows even greater similarities across the board: *-ārum*, *-ōrum*, *-um*, *-ium* (for *i*-stems), *-uum*, and *-ērum*. All genitive plurals end in *-um*.
- Dative and ablative plurals are exactly the same for all declensions. The possibilities are few: *-īs*, *-ibus*, or *-ēbus*. For five declensions and two cases, we have only three possibilities, and two of them end in *-bus*.
- The possibilities for the accusative plural are: *-ās*, *-ōs*, *-a*, *-ēs*, *-a*, *-ia*, *-ūs*, *-ua*, *-ēs*, which we could reduce for masculine and feminine nouns and adjectives to *-as*, *-ōs*, *-ēs*, and *-ūs* and, for neuter plurals, to *-a*. If we set the neuter aside, we note that the accusative plural for all masculine and feminine plurals ends in *-s*.

Latin examples

- The funeral hymn “*Diēs īrae*” (“Day of Wrath”) was written by Thomas of Celano, a Franciscan friar of the 13th century.

- The first verse reads: *Diēs īrae, diēs illa, / Solvet saeculum in favillā, / Teste David cum Sibyllā*. In English, the verse reads: “Day of wrath, that distant day, / Will end the world in glowing ash, / With David as witness along with the Sibyl.”

- The eleventh verse of the same hymn reads: *Iūste iūdex ūltiōnis, / Dōnum fac remissiōnis / Ante diem ratiōnis*. In English: “O just judge of vengeance, / Make a gift of forgiveness / Before the day of reckoning.”



© iStockphoto/Thinkstock

- The pre-Christian poet Horace wrote the line containing the famous phrase *carpe diem: Dum loquimur, invida fūgerit aetās: carpe diem*. Translated, it means: “Whenever we speak, envious time will have run away: seize the day!”
- We close with a sentence from Caesar’s *Commentaries on the Civil War*: *Pompēius senātūs virtūtem cōstantiamque collaudat*, “Pompey praises the virtue and constancy of the Senate.”

Verba

aetās, aetātis, f.: age, life, time

ante (prep. + acc.): before, in front of

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum: seize, harvest, pluck

cornū, cornūs, n.: horn

diēs, diēī, m. or f.: day

genū, genūs, n.: knee

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum: find, come upon

invidus, invida, invidum: envious

īra, īrae, f.: wrath, anger, ire

iūdex, iūdicis, m.: judge

iūdicium, iūdicī, n.: judgment, decision, trial

iūstus, iūsta, iustum: just, righteous

manus, manūs, f.: hand, band, gang

poena, poenae, f.: penalty, punishment

ratīō, ratīōnis: reckoning, account; reason; method

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum: leave, leave behind, abandon

remissiō, remissiōnis, f: release, letting go; forgiveness

rēs, reī, f.: thing, affair

saeculum (or saeculum) saeculī, n.: age, generation; world

senātus, senātūs, m.: senate

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus: release, loosen, unbind

testis, testis, m. or f.: witness

ūltiō, ūltiōnis, f.: vengeance, revenge

Memoranda

Please learn the declensions of fourth-declension *manus*, *manūs*, f., “hand,” and *cornū*, *cornūs*, n., “horn” (App. §21), and fifth-declension *rēs*, *reī*, f., “thing” (App. §22).

Agenda

i. Decline the following noun-adjective combinations.

1. great day (treat “day” as a masculine noun)
2. bad knee
3. just senate

ii. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. before the day of reckoning
2. after another night of freedom
3. under penalty of death
4. in the hands of the senate
5. concerning your (singular) affairs
6. The maidservant was entreating the maiden on (her) knees.
7. Who is that (man) talking about? (= About whom does that [man] speak?)
8. The old man was saying that the poet was writing about our wicked generation.

iii. Please translate the following into English.

1. Fīlia mea rogat quot mīlitēs in illō bellō mortuī sint.
2. Quaere et vērītātem dē hāc rē inveniēs.
3. Num iūdicium iūdicis illūs iūstum erat?
4. Cum remissiōnem cupiātis, sevērissimē pūniēminī.
5. Sī iūdex crūdēlis sorōrem nostram solvat, gaudeāmus.
6. Sī ūltiōnem nōn quaesīvissētis, līberī mānsissent amīcī.
7. Fīliō suō inventō, tam laetus erat rēx ut omnēs captōs solveret.
8. Pater vester īram dēposuit ut familia cum servīs in pāce vīveret.
9. Hōc iūdicīō scelestō factō, quis meum frātre[m] adīre audēbit?
10. Sī eum relinquant, discipulī et discipulae misericordēs verentur nē dolōrem magnum multōs diēs magister linguae Latīnae passūrus sit.

Gerunds and Gerundives

Lecture 32

In the last lecture, we saw that the fourth and fifth declensions do not pose significant hurdles to those familiar with the third declension. The fourth declension also allows us to address some mysteries of the Latin verb that lurk in the fourth principal part. As we've seen, we use the fourth principal part of the Latin verb to form two verbal adjectives: the perfect passive participle ("having been verbed") and the future active participle ("going to verb"). In this lecture, we'll take another look at the fourth principal part, but instead of using it to create participles, we will extract a verbal noun called the "supine." We will also look once again at the future passive participle, as well as at its lookalike, an active verbal noun called a "gerund."

Supines

- The supine is a verbal noun that can be used in two cases: the accusative or ablative, that is, with *-um* or *-ū*. As the ablative *-ū* indicates, these two endings are fourth-declension endings.
- Consider, for example, the verb *dīcō*, *dīcere*, *dīxī*, *dictum*. The fourth principal part, *dictum*, is actually the supine in the accusative case. In the fourth-declension ablative, the supine appears as *dictū*. These are the only two forms that appear.
- We frequently translate the ablative supine as "to verb" or "in the verbing." And it often is paired with an adverb, as in *mīrābile dictū* ("marvelous to tell" or "marvelous in the telling").
 - We can also find the ablative supine with such nouns as *fās*, which means "religiously permissible." For example, the phrase *sī hoc fās est dictū* means "if this is religiously permissible to say" or, more literally, "if this is religiously permissible in the telling."
 - The basic meaning of *dictum*, *dictū* when used as a verbal noun is, thus, "saying" or "telling," which is, of course, active, even

though the past participle, *dictus*, -a, -um, “having been said,” is passive.

- There are a number of clues and signs to enable us to distinguish the adjective or participle *dictus*, -a, -um, “having been said,” from the noun or supine *dictum*, *dictū*, “saying.” One significant clue is that the participle never ends with a long ū.
- Consider, for example, *incrēdibile vīsū* (“incredible to see” or “unbelievable in the seeing.”) We form the supine *vīsū* from the fourth principal part of *videō*, *vīsum*.
- The accusative form of the supine could look like a participle, but this form occurs only with verbs of motion or implied motion. When used with verbs of motion, the supine expresses purpose. Here’s an example: *Caesar vēnit Galliam victum*, “Caesar came for the purpose of conquering Gaul.” Here’s another example from the historian Livy: *Vēnērunt questum iniūriās*; “They came for the purpose of complaining about violent outrages.”

Gerunds

- A gerund is a verbal noun that means “verbing.” Why not use the supine? Because the supine is confined to the ablative and accusative singular and is restricted to the uses outlined above. Gerunds have more cases and more uses.
- Gerunds look like the future passive participle but appear as a neuter singular in four cases: the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. To form the future passive participle, we determine whether a verb is first conjugation, in which case, we add the endings -andus, -a, -um to the base of the verb (the first principal part minus its ō). If the verb is not first conjugation, we add -endus, -a, -um to the base.
- Let’s try *amō*, “to love.” We check its second principal part, *amāre*, and determine that the verb is first conjugation. The future passive participle, “necessary to be loved,” is, then, *amandus*, -a, -um.

Quiz

You will hear the first two principal parts of a Latin verb and the future passive participle of the verb in English. Provide the future passive participle in Latin.

1. *agō, agere*, “necessary to be done”
2. *corrigō, corrigere*, “necessary to be corrected”
3. *memoror, memorari* (deponent), “necessary to be remembered”

Answers: 1. *agendus, -a, -um*; 2. *corrigendus, -a, -um*; 3. *memorandus, -a, -um*.

Gerund forms of *amō*

Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	<i>amandī</i>
Dative	<i>amandō</i>
Accusative	<i>amandum</i>
Ablative	<i>amandō</i>

Gerund examples

- Again, gerunds are formed in the same way as the future passive participle, and they look like the future passive participle, but they are not the future passive participle. They are verbal nouns, which we must translate as nouns: Genitive *amandī* means “of loving”; dative *amandō* means “to or for loving”; accusative *amandum* means “loving”; and ablative *amandō* means “by, with, or from loving.”
- Examples:
 - *Caesar pugnandō Gallōs vīcit*. “Caesar conquered the Gauls by fighting.”
 - *Caesar pugnandī causā vēnit*. “Caesar came for the sake of fighting.”

- *Caesar ad pugnandum vēnit.* “Caesar came for fighting [or] for the purpose of fighting.”
- *Caesar pugnandō operam dat.* “Caesar gives effort to fighting.” Or, in more natural English, “Caesar pays attention to the fighting.”

Gerundives

- The gerundive is a form of the verb that is identical with the future passive participle and, as you may recall, means that something “should be done,” “must be done,” or is “necessary to be done.” As a participle, it is an adjective and, thus, agrees with the noun it modifies in case, number, and gender.
- Consider *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestum*, the source for the word “gerund.” A *bellum gerendum* is a war that “must be waged.” A *puella amanda* is a girl who must be loved or, more literally, “a girl necessary to be loved.”
- The gerund and the gerundive look virtually identical, but the gerund is an active verbal noun. The gerundive, in contrast, is a passive verbal adjective. English usage prefers active verbal nouns. Latin, however, in practice, prefers to use the passive verbal adjective.
- Both of the following sentences inform us that Caesar came for the purpose of waging war, but the first uses a gerund and the second, a gerundive.
 - *Caesar vēnit causā gerendī bellum.* “Caesar came for the purpose of waging war.”
 - *Caesar vēnit causā bellī gerendī.* “Caesar came for the purpose of war, necessary to be waged.” (In this example, a passive participle, *gerendī* [the gerundive] modifies a genitive *bellī*, which takes its case from *causā*.)

- Additional examples:
 - *Cicero dat operam litterās scrībendō.* “Cicero attends to writing letters.”
 - *Cicero dat operam litterīs scrībendīs.* “Cicero attends to letters that must be written.”

Model verbs: Gerundives, supines, gerunds

First conjugation

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

Gerundive (Passive Voice): amandus, -a, -um	
Supine (Active Voice)	
Accusative	amātum
Ablative	amātū
Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	amandī
Dative	amandō
Accusative	amandum
Ablative	amandō

Second conjugation

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see

Gerundive (Passive Voice): videndus, -a, -um	
Supine (Active Voice)	
Accusative	vīsum
Ablative	vīsū
Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	videndī
Dative	videndō
Accusative	videndum
Ablative	videndō

Third conjugation

ponō, pōnere, posuī, positum: place

Gerundive (Passive Voice): pōnendus, -a, -um	
Supine (Active Voice)	
Accusative	positum
Ablative	positū
Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	pōnendī
Dative	pōnendō
Accusative	pōnendum
Ablative	pōnendō

Third -iō conjugation

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: take

Gerundive (Passive Voice): capiendus, -a, -um	
Supine (Active Voice)	
Accusative	captum
Ablative	captū
Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	capiendī
Dative	capiendō
Accusative	capiendum
Ablative	capiendō

Fourth conjugation

sentīō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum: feel

Gerundive (Passive Voice): sentiendus, -a, -um	
Supine (Active Voice)	
Accusative	sēnsum
Ablative	sēnsū

Gerund (Active Voice)	
Genitive	sentiendī
Dative	sentiendō
Accusative	sentiendum
Ablative	sentiendō

Future passive periphrastic

- The future passive periphrastic is a compound verb that uses the future passive participle plus the helping verb *sum* to talk about something that must be done, will have to be done, or had to be done. We put the doer or agent into the dative case, which we call the “dative of agent.”
- Examples of the passive periphrastic:
 - *Bellum Caesarī gerendum est.* “The war must be waged by Caesar.”
 - *Lesbia Catullō bāsianda erat* (past-tense example). “Lesbia had to be kissed by Catullus.”
 - *Lesbia Catullō bāsianda erit* (future-tense example). “Lesbia will have to be kissed by Catullus.”
 - *Molinārius dīcit Lesbiam Catullō bāsiandam esse.* “Molinarius says that Lesbia must be kissed by Catullus.”
- One final example comes from Horace: *Nunc est bibendum.* “Now we have to drink.”

Verba

arbor, arboris, f.: tree

cārus, cāra, cārum: dear, precious, beloved

causā (ablative form of *causa* when accompanied by a genitive): for the sake/purpose of

difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum: depart, go away

fās est: it is religiously permissible, it is right, it is lawful

fatīgō, fatīgāre, fatīgāvī, fatīgātum: tire out, weary

forsitan (adv.): perhaps

grātiā (ablative form of *gratia* when accompanied by a genitive): for the sake/purpose of

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile: incredible

iniūria, iniūriae, f.: injury, injustice, wrong

iussum, iussī, n.: order, command, law

mīrābilis, mīrābile: amazing, marvelous, astonishing

opera, operae, f.: work, pains (*dāre operam* = to give attention)

oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum: attack, assault, storm

pēs, pedis, m.: foot

pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī, pulsātum: strike, beat

queror, querī, questus sum: complain, lament, bewail

tellūs, tellūris, f.: earth, globe; ground

tempus, temporis, n.: time

vērō (adv.): in truth, indeed

Memoranda

Please learn the forms of the supines and gerunds for the model verbs *amō* (App. §53), *videō* (App. §54), *pōnō* (App. §55), *capiō* (App. §56), and *sentiō* (App. §57) and review the formation of their participles. Also, compare App. §§61–62 on the formation of the passive periphrastic tenses that consist of future participles in combination with forms of *sum* (App. §52).

Agenda

i. Use the passive periphrastic construction (with a dative of agent) to render the following sentences in Latin.

1. The girl must be loved by the boy.
2. The city had to be attacked by our legions.
3. These injustices must be bewailed by all citizens.
4. Those trees will have to be cut down by the priest.
5. My mother says that the gods must be worshiped by the farmer.
6. Does she think that all teachers should be esteemed by their students?
7. The slave didn't have to be beaten by his master, did he?
8. Our dear sister will have to be released by the cruel judge.

ii. Please translate the following into English.

1. *Servī nostrī ad ignem extinguendum currunt.*
2. *Imperātor causā sacrificiī peragendī adit.*

3. Cum aliīs discipulīs sapientibus ad linguam Latīnam discendam vēnī.
4. Illa vērō quae audāx dīxit hīc senex mīrābilia audītū erant.
5. Dux cum legiōne suā mīlitēs fatīgātōs iūtum veniet.
6. Uxor mea animālibus vēndendīs operam dedit.
7. Si hoc fās dictū est, poētae pūniendī nōn sunt, quī contrā lēgēs huius senātūs scrībant, sed deīs immortalibus custōdiendī.
8. Amīcus tuus semper negat hās iniūriās populō līberō patiendās esse.
9. Cum et patrem et mātrem et frātrēs suōs amāret, virgō fortis illā nocte discessit eōsque relīquit. Haec vērō rēs difficilis eī agenda erat.
10. Prō filiō suō iūdicem precātur illa scelestā. Putāsne poenam iustam eī dīmittendam esse?
11. Carthāgō dēlenda est!
12. Catō semper dīcēbat Carthāginem dēlendam esse.
13. Dōnō remissiōnis factō, ducis iussa mīlitibus omnibus sequenda sunt.

Counting in Latin

Lecture 33

In the last lecture, we looked at supines, gerunds, gerundives, and the future passive periphrastic. We are almost done with the Latin verb, but first, we need to review the future passive infinitive, which we saw briefly in an earlier lecture. In this lecture, we will come to understand the future passive infinitive, rather than simply translate it. This will also give us a reason to explore the verb “to go,” which is irregular in Latin. Finally, we will learn to count in Latin.

Perfect indicative, *eō, īre, īvī* (or *īī*), *itum*: go

1	īvī	īī
2	īvistī	īstī
3	īvit	iit
1	īvimus	īimus
2	īvistis	īstis
3	īvērunt	iērunt

Present indicative, *eō, īre, īī*, *itum*: go

	Singular	Plural
1	eō	īmus
2	īs	ītis
3	it	eunt

Present subjunctive, *eō, īre, ivī, itum*: go

	Singular	Plural
1	eam	eāmus
2	eās	eātis
3	eat	eant

Imperfect indicative, *eō, īre, ivī, itum*: go

	Singular	Plural
1	ībam	ībāmus
2	ībās	ībātis
3	ībat	ībant

Imperfect subjunctive, *eō, īre, ivī, itum*: go

	Singular	Plural
1	īrem	īrēmus
2	īrēs	īrētis
3	īret	īrent

Future indicative, *eō, īre, ivī, itum*: go

	Singular	Plural
1	ībō	ībimus
2	ībis	ībitis
3	ībit	ībunt

Future passive infinitives

- In English, we can't make the verb "to go" passive and expect it to make sense, and yet, in the third-person singular, Latin frequently makes "go" passive. A famous line from Vergil's *Aeneid* reads: *Ītur in antīquam silvam*. Literally, *ītur* means "it is gone," which is not English and, thus, indecipherable.
- Latin sometimes uses the third-person singular of intransitive verbs impersonally, in other words, to express an action without

naming the persons who did the action. We generally translate such impersonal phrases in English with such phrases as “there is a going,” or “one goes.”

- Vergil wrote *Ītur in antīquam silvam* when Aeneas, with a small group, entered an ancient forest in search of the Sibyl who would take him to the underworld. “There is an entering into an ancient forest.” The impersonal construction adds a haunted quality to the scene.
- Latin uses this impersonal construction with the verb *veniō, venīre*, “come,” as well: *Veniēbātur ad castra*; “There was a coming to the camp.”
- The second principal part of *eō, īre, īvī, ītum*, that is, *īre*, “to go,” can be made passive. *Īrī* is the infinitive equivalent of there being an impersonal arrival. This infinitive can be used to represent such forms as *ītur* in indirect statement and can be combined with the supine to create the future passive infinitive, which is seen only rarely.
- The following table shows the future passive infinitives for our model verbs.

Conjugation	Active Principal Parts	Future Passive Infinitive
First	<i>amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum</i> : love	<i>amātum īrī</i> : to be going to be loved
Second	<i>videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum</i> : see	<i>vīsum īrī</i> : to be going to be seen
Third	<i>pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum</i> : place	<i>positum īrī</i> : to be going to be placed
Third - <i>io</i>	<i>capiō, capere, cēpī, captum</i> : take	<i>captum īrī</i> : to be going to be taken
Fourth	<i>sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum</i> : feel	<i>sēsum īrī</i> : to be going to be felt

- Caesar's entire *Dē bellō Gallicō* offers us exactly one *īrī* used as a present passive infinitive to represent *ītur* in indirect statement and exactly one *īrī* used to form a future passive infinitive. Here's the single instance of a future passive infinitive: *Cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cenābī tuendī causā ... compārābant*; "When they reckoned that this affair would be dragged out longer, they prepared a fort for watching over Cenabum."

Cardinal numbers

1	ūnus
2	duo
3	trēs
4	quattuor
5	quīnque
6	sex
7	septem
8	octō
9	novem
10	decem
11	ūndecim
12	duodecim

13	tredecim
14	quattuordecim
15	quīndecim
16	sēdecim
17	septendecim
18	duodēvīgintī
19	ūndēvīgintī
20	vīgintī
17	septendecim
18	duodēvīgintī
19	ūndēvīgintī
20	vīgintī

Note: The teens in Latin are built on *decem* (the number 10) up through *septendecim* (the number 17); after that, Latin begins deducting from 20.

Counting by 10s in Latin

10	decem
20	vīgintī
30	trīgintā
40	quadrāgintā
50	quīnquāgintā

Ordinal numbers

1 st	prīmus
2 nd	secundus <i>or</i> alter
3 rd	tertius
4 th	quārtus
5 th	quīntus

Counting by 10s in Latin

60	sexāgintā
70	septuāgintā
80	octōgintā
90	nōnāgintā
100	centum

Ordinal numbers

6 th	sextus
7 th	septimus
8 th	octāvus
9 th	nōnus
10 th	decimus

Note: The ordinal numbers are first- and second-declension adjectives (e.g., primus, prima, primum).

Declension of *ūnus, ūna, ūnum*: one

	<i>ūnus</i> : one		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
Genitive	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus
Dative	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
Accusative	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
Ablative	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

Declension of *duo, duae, duo*: two; *trēs, tria*: three

	<i>duo, duae</i> : two			<i>trēs, tria</i> : three	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Genitive	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Accusative	duōs	duās	duo	trēs	tria
Ablative	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

Note: Most of the cardinal numbers are indeclinable. The number one declines in the singular and has three genders, *ūnus, ūna, ūnum*; two declines in the plural and has three genders, *duo, duae, dua*; and three declines in the

plural in three genders, *trēs* (masculine and feminine) and *tria* (neuter). Their declensions include a mix of endings. Finally, the number 1,000, *mille*, does not decline in the singular but does in the plural as a neuter third-declension: *mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus*.

A Roman mile

- When we read Caesar, we frequently encounter the phrases *mille passuum* and *mīlia passuum*, which literally mean, respectively, “a thousand of paces” and “thousands of paces.” This measure (1,000 steps or paces) represented the basis of a Roman mile.
- In his *Dē bellō Gallicō*, Caesar justifies his invasion of Gaul in part by framing his operation as a defensive measure to prevent the Helvetians from leaving their territory, which corresponded roughly to modern Switzerland. Caesar gives us precise measurements of the territory: *In longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL [ducentī et quadrāgintā], in latitūdinem CLXXX [centum et octōgintā]*.
- Translated, these dimensions read: “In length (longitude) thousands of paces two hundred and forty, in width (latitude) one hundred and eighty (thousands of paces),” or 240 Roman miles long by 180 Roman miles wide.

Verba

comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum: prepare, furnish, get ready

exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum: go out, exit

exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātum: estimate, reckon, consider

ineō, inīre, iniī, initum: go in, enter

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum: prepare, provide, obtain

passus, passūs, m.: step, pace

praesidium, praesidiī, n.: fort, defense

silva, silvae, f.: forest, wood

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, -a, -um sum: watch over, guard

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts and present-tense forms of the irregular verb *eō* (App. §70) and familiarize yourself with the formation of the other more regular tenses. Roman numerals and rules for their declension may be found in Appendix §§36–39.

Agenda

- i. Translate the following using the correct form of the verb *eō*, *adeō*, *exeō*, and *ineō*.
 1. We are going.
 2. Let us go.
 3. They had approached.
 4. We were entering.
 5. Everyone exits.
 6. Let them go out.
 7. I will go.
 8. Go! (plural)
 9. She will have approached.
 10. Are you (plural) going?

ii. Write the following cardinal numbers in Latin.

1. ten
2. twenty
3. thirty
4. one hundred
5. thirty-eight
6. nine
7. twelve
8. seven
9. sixty-five
10. four
11. sixteen
12. ninety-nine
13. eight
14. fifty-three
15. four thousand

iii. Please translate the following into Latin.

1. She had two daughters and one son.
2. Which student (male) of these three did it?

3. I entered with my two (male) friends.
4. I shall exit with my two (female) friends.
5. We will come by the first ship tomorrow.
6. You are the third woman who has said this to my father.
7. Where are those two girls going?
8. What rumors of these six old men have our three (male) teachers heard concerning those two (male) students?
9. The laws of the republic had to be written by ten men.

iv. Please translate the following into English.

1. Itur in locum malum.
2. Multa praesidia comparābimus ut populum custōdiāmus.
3. Mīlitēs captōs tuēbantur trēs sōlī virī.
4. Per agrōs asperōs silvāsque antīquās nostrae legiōnēs miserae multa mīlia passuum errābant.
5. Dux sē istōs fatīgātōs cum centum mīlitibus suīs posse captūrum esse exīstimāvit.
6. Querāmur eās mīlle iniūriās huius imperātōris scelestī!
7. Cum sex mīlibus mīlitum fidēlium ad Germānōs dēlendōs vēnit dux.
8. Quot Germanae in aquā erant? Utrum trēs an quattuor vīdistis? Difficile est dictū.

More on Irregular Verbs

Lecture 34

In the last lecture, we studied the last of the regular Latin verb forms. In this lecture, we will look at a few more irregular verbs and begin to discuss strategies for those who do not have time to memorize all the Latin forms. We will continue this discussion throughout the final three lectures of the course. The good news is that most irregular verbs, are most irregular in the present-tense system and, even there, mostly in the present-tense indicative. Their perfect tenses (the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect) follow the rules, although we do need to know the principal parts.

Present indicative, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*: carry

	Active	Passive
Singular		
1	ferō	feror
2	fers	ferris
3	fert	fertur
Plural		
1	ferimus	ferimur
2	fertis	feriminī
3	ferunt	feruntur

Present active subjunctive, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*: carry

	Singular	Plural
1	feram	ferāmus
2	ferās	ferātis
3	ferat	ferant

Imperfect passive indicative, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*: carry

	Singular	Plural
1	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
2	ferēbāris	ferēbāminī
3	ferēbātur	ferēbantur

Imperfect active subjunctive, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*: carry

	Singular	Plural
1	ferrem	ferrēmus
2	ferrēs	ferrētis
3	ferret	ferrent

Other irregular verbs

Present subjunctive

	volō, velle: be willing	nōlō, nōlle: be unwilling	mālō, mälle: prefer
Singular			
1	velim	nōlim	mālim
2	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3	velit	nōlit	mālit
Plural			
1	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3	velint	nōlint	mālint

Imperfect subjunctive, *volō, velle, voluī*

	Singular	Plural
1	vellem	vellēmus
2	vellēs	vellētis
3	vellet	vellent

Present indicative

	volō, velle: be willing	nōlō, nōlle: be unwilling	mālō, mälle: prefer
Singular			
1	volō	nōlō	mālō
2	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
3	vult	nōn vult	māvult
Plural			
1	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
2	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
3	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

Present subjunctive, *fīō, fierī, factus sum*: be made, be done, become, happen

	Singular	Plural
1	fīam	fīāmus
2	fīās	fīātis
3	fīat	fīant

Future and imperfect indicative, *fīō, fierī, factus sum*: be made, be done, become, happen

	Future	Imperfect
Singular		
1	fīam	fīēbam
2	fīēs	fīēbās
3	fīet	fīēbat
Plural		
1	fīēmus	fīēbāmus
2	fīētis	fīēbātis
3	fīent	fīēbant

Imperfect subjunctive, *fīō, fierī, factus sum*: be made, be done, become, happen

	Singular	Plural
1	fierem	fierēmus
2	fierēs	fierētis
3	fieret	fierent

Present indicative, *fīō, fierī, factus sum*: be made, be done, become, happen

	Singular	Plural
1	fīō	fīmus
2	fīs	fītis
3	fīt	fīunt

Texts from Plautus, Martial, and Livy

- Plautus was a Roman comic dramatist. In one play he wrote: *Nōlī ... meā causā hunc verberāre!* “Don’t beat him on account of me!”
- Plautus also wrote: *Nōlī mulierī crēdere!* “Don’t believe the woman!”
- The satiric poet Martial wrote this line: *Māvīs habitāre tabernās.* “You prefer to inhabit taverns.”
- From the ninth book of Livy’s *History of Rome*, we read: *Quid enim fierī ad plācandōs deōs potuit quod nōs nōn fēcimus?* “What indeed could be done for the purpose of placating the gods that we did not do?”

Verba

efferrō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum: bring out, expose, publish

enim (conj.): for, indeed

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: bear, carry, endure

fīō, fierī, factus sum: happen, become; be made, be done

habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum: dwell, reside, live; inhabit

indignus, indigna, indignum: unworthy

magis (adv.): more

mālō, mālī, mālūī: prefer

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī: not want, be unwilling (*nōlī/nōlīte* + infinitive = negative imperative, e.g., *nōlī amāre* = don't love!)

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum: bring to, present, offer; dedicate

patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum: make open; disclose, expose

plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātum: placate, appease

sānus, sāna, sānum: sound, healthy, sane

sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum: hold up, support; endure, suffer

taberna, tabernae, f.: booth, stall, inn, tavern

verberō, verberāre, verberāvī, verberātum: beat, strike, lash

volō, velle, volūī: want, wish, be willing

Memoranda

Please learn the principal parts and present-tense forms of the irregular verbs *ferō* (App. §67); *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō* (App. §68); and *fīō* (App. §69) and familiarize yourself with the formation of the other more regular tenses.

Notā bene: The present imperatives of *nōlō* (*nōlī* and *nōlīte*) may be combined with present-tense infinitives to create negative commands, e.g., *Nōlī Catullum bāsiāre, Caesar!* “Don’t kiss Catullus, O Caesar!”

Agenda

i. Conjugate the following verbs in the present active indicative.

1. *ferō*
2. *volō*
3. *fiō*
4. *mālō*

ii. Give the Latin forms in the indicative mood.

1. We were not willing (imperfect).
2. They did not want.
3. You (plural) had preferred.
4. It was happening.
5. It has been done.
6. They used to carry.
7. She is being carried.
8. You (singular) will carry.
9. They will want.
10. She will have preferred.

11. They (neuter) will have been made.
12. We will prefer.
- iii. Give the Latin forms in the subjunctive mood, in the tense indicated.
 1. They may want (present).
 2. I may prefer (present).
 3. He might carry (imperfect).
 4. Let her be carried (present).
 5. We might not want (imperfect).
 6. He preferred (perfect).
 7. It had been made (pluperfect).
 8. Let it happen (present).
 9. You (singular) might be made (imperfect).
 10. She may not wish (present).
- iv. Please translate the following into Latin.
 1. Do not cut down the beautiful trees, O general!
 2. Don't run in the villa, boys and girls!
 3. Don't carry the wine into the fields, farmers!
 4. Did his mother prefer to reside in the city?

5. The father was so merciful that he was unwilling to lash the unworthy son.
6. The sacrifices having been offered to the mighty gods [use an ablative absolute], three legions were sent to destroy the Germans.

v. Please translate the following into English.

1. Mōrēs multōrum populōrum intellegere vult mēns sāna.
2. Frātris mortuū corpus, quod nōbis ūrendum est, ex urbe ferāmus.
3. Sī iūdicium iniustum dē hāc rē facere nōlueris, rex iūdicem alterum inueniet.
4. In diē ratiōnis laetī fient hominēs iustī, sed rēgēs scelestī īram Deī sufferent.
5. Cum lībertātem custōdīre vellent cīvēs, multae iniūriae sibi (by them; cf. App. §41) efferendae erant.
6. Sī enim istī septem coniūrātī congregāre mālent sub lūce lūnae, ignēs magnī parābuntur causā hominum scelestōrum patefaciendōrum.
7. Nōlī discēdere, uxor mea! Deīs plācandīs operam dēmus.
8. Virginibus nōlentibus, Catullum bāsiāre mālle dīcit miser Caesar.
9. Deō volente (please note ablative in -e; cf. App. §29.a), linguam Latīnam discere discipulī et discipulae semper volent.

Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Lecture 35

In this lecture, we will discuss adjectives and adverbs of comparison. We'll investigate the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees of regular and irregular adjectives, and we'll see how to turn comparative adjectives into adverbs. Then, we'll review some of the strategies we've used for translating Latin and close the lecture with a look at a Latin tombstone inscription. Such inscriptions sometimes speak more directly to us as modern-day readers than do the learned discourses of highly polished literary figures.

Comparative adjectives

- As we all know, adjectives describe. For example, we can call Neptune “savage” or “fierce”: *Neptūnus saevus est*. We could also say that Mars is more vicious than Neptune: *Mars magis saevus est quam Neptūnus* (*magis* meaning “more” and *quam* meaning “than”).
- But Latin also offers the comparative form of the adjective, which is the equivalent of putting *-er* on the end. In English, we would say, “Mars is fiercer than Neptune”; in Latin: *Mars saevior est quam Neptūnus*. The *-ior* ending is equivalent to English *-er* on “fiercer.” This is the comparative degree of the adjective, the form of the adjective used for making comparisons.
- Latin can also eliminate *quam* (“than”) altogether and put the comparandum in the ablative, which we call the “ablative of comparison”: *Mars saevior est Neptūnō*; “Mars is fiercer than Neptune.”
- To describe Jupiter, the fiercest god of all, we could use *maximē*, which means “most,” and say *maximē saevus*, “most fierce.” But we can also use the superlative degree of the adjective, which is the equivalent of *-est*, as in “fiercest.” In Latin, the ending is *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*. “Jupiter is the fiercest”: *Iuppiter saevissimus est*.

- The three forms of the adjective (e.g., *saevus*, *saevior*, *saevissimus*) are called the “degrees” of the adjective. The regular or normal form of the adjective is called the “positive” degree: *Neptūnus saevus est*; “Neptune is fierce.” The comparative degree is for comparisons and the superlative degree is used, obviously, for superlatives.
- In Latin, “happy, happier, most happy” would be *laetus*, *laetior*, *laetissimus*. But in Latin, we have three genders and three declensions in the various degrees.
 - The positive degree of *laetus* is a first- and second-declension adjective; thus, the other genders are *laeta* (feminine) and *laetum* (neuter).
 - The comparative degree, however, is a third-declension adjective of two endings; thus, we use *laetior* for masculine and feminine nouns and *laetius* for neuter nouns. A “happier war” would be *bellum laetius*. That might be confusing, because the positive degree would be *bellum laetum* (a “happy war”), but there are two clues: First, why does a *-us* ending modify such an obviously neuter word as *bellum*? Second, there is a telltale *i* before the *-us*; it’s not *-us* at all but *-ius*.
 - The genitive for all three genders is *laetiōris*, and after that, only what look like regular third-declension noun endings are used (see App. §27.b for the whole declension). For example, “by means of happier wars” is *bellis laetiōribus*.
 - The superlative forms are first and second declension. For example, *homō laetissimus*, the “happiest person”; *pyra laetissima*, the “most fortunate funeral pyre”; and *ōmen laetissimum*, the “most happy omen.”
- This works for third-declension adjectives, as well. *Fortis*, *forte* is a regular third-declension adjective that means “strong.” We form the comparative degree by adding *-ior* for the masculine and feminine and *-ius* for the neuter, yielding: *fortior*, *fortius*.

We form the superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um*: *fortissimus*, *fortissima*, *fortissimum*.

Irregular adjectives

- One of the most irregular adjectives in both English and Latin is “good.” In English, the degrees of this adjective are “good, better, best.” In Latin, we find: *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*; *melior*, *melius*; *optimus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- Similarly, “bad, worse, worst” is *malus*, *-a*, *-um*; *peior*, *peius*; *pessimus*, *-a*, *-um*. There are some other irregular adjectives, of course, but knowing the general shape of the comparative and superlative degrees allows us to figure out oddities as we encounter them.
- Consider this slightly irregular superlative: If *facilis* means “easy,” what does *facillimus* mean—“easier” or “easiest”? If the adjective were regular in all three degrees, we’d expect *facilis*, *facilior*, *facilissimus*. Instead, we find *facilis*, *facilior*, *facillimus*, with a double *l*. This is the regular pattern for adjectives whose stems end in *-l*. For example, *gracilis* means “graceful”; “most graceful” is *gracillimus*.
- When the stem of an adjective ends in *-r*, we also double the *r*. For example, “pretty, prettier, prettiest” is *pulcher*, *pulchrior*, *pulcherrimus*.

Adverbs

- Adjectives of the first and second declension can be turned into adverbs by the substitution of *-ē* for the ending. For example: “rapid,” *rapidus*; “rapidly,” *rapidē*; “most rapid,” *rapidissimus*; “most rapidly,” *rapidissimē*. To form “more rapidly,” however, we need to know that the comparative adverb derives from the neuter accusative form of the comparative adjective (which, of course, looks just like the neuter nominative); thus, “more rapidly” is *rapidius*.

- What about *facilis* (“easily”)? This word is third declension, so we use the neuter singular: *facile*, *facilius* (“more easily,” neuter singular), *facillimē* (“most easily”; replace the *-us* ending of the slightly irregular form *facillimus* with *-ē*). Other examples: “happily, more happily, most happily,” *laetē*, *laetius*, *laetissimē*; “fiercely, more fiercely, most fiercely,” *saevē*, *saevius*, *saevissimē*.
- Another adverbial ending is *-ter*. To say “Caesar fights bravely,” we could use the neuter accusative singular of the third-declension adjective *fortis*, *forte* and write *Caesar forte pugnat*, or we could use the suffix *-ter* and write *Caesar fortiter pugnat*.

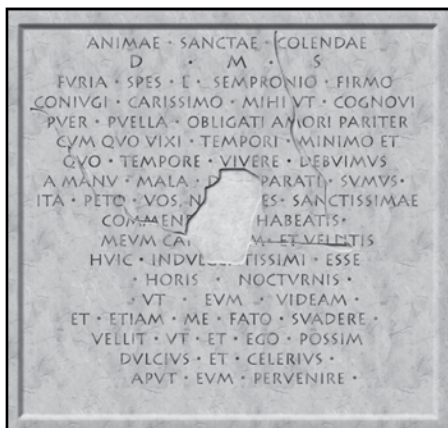
Enjoying Latin

- Throughout this course, we’ve worked on strategies for tackling sentences, clauses, and phrases; looking for the essentials; and filling in the details after grasping the main point. This approach will work well as you continue your study of Latin.
- We’ve also seen that the repetitive nature of patterns can help us make our way through Latin, even when we are unsure of a tense, mood, or case.
 - If we can find the verb and we remember how *-o* or *-m*, *s*, *t*, *mus*, *tis*, *nt* or, perhaps, *-r*, *ris*, *tur*, *mur*, *mini*, *ntur* affect the meaning, we have already accomplished a great deal.
 - We have also observed patterns in the various cases. For example, dative and ablative plurals can end in *-īs*, *ibus*, or *ēbus*.
- Such observations and strategies can take us a long way even with a minimal morphological and grammatical repertoire. The key is to be patient and to keep experimenting with possibilities.

Latin inscriptions

- One place where ancient voices communicate with us directly is on inscriptions, especially Roman tombstones. In comparison, for example, to the Latin in an oration by Cicero, a highly educated

politician, the Latin we find on inscriptions often speaks to us simply and directly; we get a real sense that the author is speaking to us personally across the millennia. Although the Latin is not always flawless, it conveys meaning.



- The *Corpus Inscriptionum Latinarum* is a huge collection of inscriptions from all territories that were once part of the Roman world. Inscription 18817 from volume six of this collection comes from a tombstone erected in imperial times by a freedwoman named Furia Spes for her deceased husband, whose name was Lucius Sempronius Firmus. The inscription is shown below.

Animae sanctae colendae dīs mānibus sacrum Fūria Spēs [hoc fēcit] Lūciō Semprōniō Firmō coniugī carissimō mihi, ut cognōvī puer puella obligātī amōrī[e?] pariter, cum quō vīxī temporī[e?] mīnimō et quō tempore vīvere dēbuimus, ā mānū malā diseperātī sumus. Ita petō vōs [mā]nēs sanctissimae[?] commendāt[um] habeātis meum cārum et velītis huic indulgentissimī esse hōrīs nocturnīs, ut eum videam et etiam mē fātō suādēre velit, ut et ego possim dulcius et celerius apud eum pervenīre.

- Translated, the first sentence reads: “Furia Spes has dedicated this sacred tomb to the divine deceased spirit of a holy soul deserving of reverence, Lucius Sempronius Firmus, a husband most dear to me, as soon as I knew him, a girl and a boy bound equally in love.”

Verba

acerbus, acerba, acerbum: bitter, harsh

anima, animae, f.: spirit, soul

asper, aspera, asperum: rough, difficult, harsh

avārus, avāra, avārum: avaricious, greedy

certus, certa, certum: certain, definite, sure

clārus, clāra, clārum: clear, bright; famous

cognoscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, cognitum: become acquainted with, know

coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f.: spouse

currus, currūs, m.: chariot

dī mănēs: divine spirits (in reference to the ancestral spirits of the deceased), divine spirit (although plural, can also be rendered in the singular to refer to a deceased individual)

flūmen, flūminis, n.: river

Mănēs, Mānium, m. or f.: departed spirits, the dead

melior, melius (comp. of *bonus*): better

obligō, obligāre, obligāvī, obligātum: bind

oculus, oculī, m.: eye

optimus, optima, optimum (superl. of *bonus*): best

pār, gen. paris: equal

peior, peius (comp. of *malus*): worse

pessimus, pessima, pessimum (superl. of *malus*): worst

plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātum: appease, soothe, calm

quam: than (in comparisons); as ... as possible (with superlatives)

rapidus, rapida, rapidum: fast, swift

sacer, sacra, sacrum: sacred, consecrated, devoted

sānctus, sāncta, sānctum: holy, sacred

Memoranda

Please learn the principles for the comparison of adjectives and adverbs (App. §§30–34) and familiarize yourself with the irregular comparison of common adjectives (App. §33).

Notā bene: The third declension of the comparative degree of the adjective is irregular, as it declines according to the pattern of a regular third-declension consonant stem noun. Refer to the declension of *fortior, fortius*, “braver,” in Appendix §27.b, which may be compared to the *i*-stem declension of the regular third-declension adjective *fortis, forte*, “brave,” in Appendix §27.a.

The superlative degree of all adjectives is first and second declension and may be declined according to the pattern of *magnus* (App. §23).

Agenda

i. Decline *more rapid river*. The first two cases are given.

Nominative: flūmen rapidius

Genitive: flūminis rapidiōris

ii. Decline *stronger girl*.

iii. Please translate the following into English.

1. cēnae optimae (gen.)
2. diēs pessimī
3. rapidē
4. cum meō amīcō novissimō
5. pariter
6. labōrī facillimō
7. corpus s̄anissimum
8. noctium longiōrum
9. longē
10. fēminam sapientissimam
11. in s̄anctissimō locō
12. rēgī avāriōrī
13. certē
14. astra clāriōra
15. poētae miserrimō
16. acerbē

iv. Please translate the following into English.

1. Oculōs clārissimōs habēs.
2. Hīs enim audītīs, clāriōra lūce sunt cōsilia coniūrātōrum.
3. Imperātor scrīpsit sē magis puellam quam oculōs suōs amāre.
4. Anima poētae mortuī sānctissima tibi colenda est.
5. Coniūnx meus amōre obligātus illōs labōrēs difficillimōs prō filiō peraget.
6. Potesne nāve rapidiōre venīre?
7. Nōlī avārus esse! Amīcīs semper carissimīs dōna optima tibi danda sunt.
8. Ille senex vītā apud Manēs fēlīciōrem vītā apud nōs acerbā futūram esse dīcit, sed nōlīte eī crēdere!
9. Cēnam rapidē parēmus; hospitēs ad villam adeunt!
10. Asperrimās poenās fortissimē sustulērunt omnēs cīvēs, sed nostrī iūdicēs iniustissimī certē nōn placābuntur.
11. Cum Germānī ācritē pugnent, verēmur ut ā legiōnibus Caesaris dēleantur.
12. In senātū frāter tuus tam stultē locūtus est, ut in viam herī ēicerētur.

Next Steps in Reading Latin

Lecture 36

In our last lecture, we compared adjectives and adverbs and began reading a Latin inscription as an illustration of how we can work through a translation using our knowledge of Latin syntax and, of course, a dictionary. As we saw in the last lecture, inscriptions are especially intriguing. The authors of these texts were often, like us, not experts in all the niceties of Latin grammar and syntax. Inscriptions permit everyday people to speak to us directly from the ancient stones on which they inscribed their words. In this lecture, we will finish translating the inscription of Furia Spes for her deceased husband.

Inscription for Lucius Sempronius Firmus

*Animae s̄anctae colendae dīs
mānibus sacrum Fūria Spēs [hoc
fēcit] Lūciō Semprōniō Firmō
coniugī carissimō mihi, ut cognōvī
puer puella obligātī amōrī[e?]
pariter, cum quō vīxī temporī[e?]
mīnimō et quō tempore vīvere
dēbuimus, ā mānū malā disepērātī
sumus. Ita petō vōs [mā]nēs
sanctissimae[r?] commendāt[um]
habeātis meum cārum et velītis
huic indulgentissimī esse hōrīs
nocturnīs, ut eum videam et etiam
mē fātō suādēre velit, ut et egō
possim dulcius et celerius apud
eum pervenīre.*

Furia Spes has dedicated this funerary altar to the divine spirit of a soul deserving reverence, to Lucius Sempronius Firmus, a husband most dear to me, as soon as I became acquainted with (him), we a girl (and) a boy became bound equally in love, with whom I lived for a very short time, and at which time we were supposed to live, by an evil hand we were divided. I thus beseech you, O most holy ancestral spirits, that you consider my beloved well-recommended, and that you should wish to be most lenient to him during nocturnal hours, so that I may see him, and also that he should want to commend me to fate, so that I too may be able to arrive more sweetly and swiftly at his dwelling place.

Further readings in Latin

- With the knowledge of Latin you have gained in this course, you can continue to explore this remarkably stable language, with its continuous literary record that stretches back to 200 B.C.E. and that continues to generate new vocabulary.
 - After the fall of Rome, Latin remained the language of the learned. Scholars and poets produced new works throughout the Middle Ages and beyond. When Spain conquered the New World, poets described the scenes in Latin. As late as 1782, Rafael Landivar published his *Rusticatio Mexicana*, 15 books of Latin poetry describing the people and landscapes of Mexico and Guatemala.
 - Into the 20th century, universities conducted seminars in Latin. And Latin lives on, of course, in its many modern variants and in English.
- Composed after World War II for returning GIs, *Wheelock's Latin* is excellent for review of grammar and syntax. *Wheelock's* derives its examples from authentic Latin texts, which renders them at once challenging and interesting. Extra exercises can be found online.
- If you'd like to try a classical author, use a transitional reader from the *Legamus* series. These readers are geared specifically for students who have studied forms and morphology but have not had a great deal of experience reading extended passages in Latin.
 - The series includes volumes dedicated to Caesar, Catullus, Cicero, Horace, Ovid, and Vergil. These readers review grammar and syntax through warm-up exercises and help students work their way through unadapted Latin passages with extensive notes and vocabulary.
 - You might also want to acquire the *Teacher's Guide* for whatever reader you choose, because it will provide answers to the exercises, translations, and additional explanations.

- Jerome's translation of the Bible into Latin, the *Biblia Sacra Vulgata*, also serves as an excellent resource for further study. You can even download a Bible app onto your smart phone and compare Jerome's Latin with the original Hebrew or Greek, not to mention numerous modern translations.
- You can, of course, download numerous public domain Latin textbooks from the Web. For additional online reading, the *Perseus Digital Library* offers texts in Latin of most classical Roman authors and provides hyperlinks for each Latin word. A click on a word brings up a window that parses the morphological possibilities. From there, readers can call up full dictionary entries. Additional links bring you to translations, grammars, and commentaries.
- See also the "Resources for Further Study" section of this guidebook for additional suggestions.
- Finally, as you continue your studies, you will find that Latin is an addiction that you can pursue through both longer readings in Latin and through words and phrases we use in English every day. You have been initiated into many secrets, and your hard-won skills will stand you in good stead as you continue your journey in Latin.

Verba

commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātum: commend, approve, recommend

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum: increase, grow, augment

etiam (adv.): even, also

fātum, fātī, n.: fate

fruor, fruī, fructus sum (+ abl.): enjoy, have the use and enjoyment of

hōra, hōrae, f.: hour, time

imperium, imperiī, n.: authority, supreme power, power to command

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum: give orders to ; command

indulgēns, gen. indulgentis: lenient, gentle, kind, indulgent

iter, itineris, n.: journey

maior, maius/maximus, -a, -um: comp./superl. forms of *magnus*

nocturnus, nocturna, nocturnum: nocturnal, by night

oboediō, oboedīre, oboedīvī, oboedītum (+ dat.): obey, be subject to

parvus, parva, parvum: small, little (comp. = *minor*, *minus*; superl. = *minimus*, -a, -um)

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum: arrive, reach

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, ask for, beg

sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātum: separate, divide

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum: advise, recommend, urge, persuade

Memoranda

Please review the forms and paradigms in the Appendix, as needed!

Agenda

i. Please give the Latin for the following verb forms.

1. I will beg.
2. He wanted (perfect subjunctive).

3. They were begging (imperfect subjunctive).
 4. She prefers.
 5. I was supposed to live (use perfect tense).
 6. I will be separated.
 7. You (singular) will have arrived.
 8. Let us commend.
 9. They may be unwilling.
 10. Let him beg.
 11. You (plural) had lived.
 12. You (plural) had lived (subjunctive).
 13. It is being carried.
 14. We might hold (imperfect subjunctive).
 15. She will have been persuaded.
- ii. Please translate the following into English.
1. Num illōs, quibuscum (see App.§46.b) tempore minimō vīxistī, dīligēbās?
 2. Bellō actō, hī duo mīlitēs ā fātī manū sēparātī sunt.
 3. In manūs Deōrum Mānium indulgentissimās animām frātris nostrī commendēmus.

4. Hōrīs nocturnīs deōs deāsque precābātur pater ut parva puella per noctem longissimam vīveret.
5. Quid vērō rēx facere velit, rogat pontifex. Num imperat, ut hae arborēs sacerrimae caedantur?
6. Quid amōre dulcius est? Pecūniam avārus māvult. Aliī imperium dulcissimum esse dīcunt.
7. Celeriter īte! Mātrī opem ferre herī dēbuistis; poena gravissima adit!
8. Dux etiam quī apud hominēs imperiō maximō fruātur maiōrī fātī imperiō oboedit ipse.
9. Tam rapidē currēbant aquae ut neque mīlitēs neque mulierēs flūmen trānsīre possent.
10. Sī apud eam laetius habitāre vīs, hīc liber tibi legendus est.
11. Iūdicibus iniustīs ēiectīs, reī pūblicae servandae operam dent omnēs cīvēs liberī liberaeque.
12. Multīs rēbus asperimīs peractīs, ad finem itineris prīmī pervēnimus. Astra pulcherrima vidēre possumus. Latīnē loquimur. Gaudeāmus!

Vocabulary (Verba)

ab (preposition + ablative): by, from (the *b* can be omitted when *ab* is coupled with a word that begins with a consonant: *a Caesare* = by Caesar)

abūtor, abūtī, abūsus sum: abuse, misuse

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum: hear of, receive, accept

ācer, ācris, ācre: sharp, keen, fierce

acerbus, acerba, acerbum: bitter, harsh

ad (prep. + acc.): to, toward, near

addō, addere, addidī, additum: put or place upon, add

adeō, adīre, adiī, aditum: go to, approach

adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātum: worship, adore

adsum, adesse, adfuī (compound of *sum*): be present

aestimō, aestimāre, aestimāvī, aestimātum: estimate, value, rate

aetās, aetātis, f.: age, life, time

aeternus, aeterna, aeternum: eternal

ager, agrī, m.: field

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum: do, drive, lead

agricola, agricolae, m.: farmer

alius, alia, aliud: other, another

alter, altera, alterum: another, the other

amīca, amīcae, f.: female friend

amīcus, amīcī, m.: male friend

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissum: lose, let go; miss

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum: love

amor, amōris, m.: love

an (conjunction): or

ancilla, ancillae, f.: maidservant, female slave

angelus, angeli, m.: angel, messenger

anima, animae, f.: spirit, soul

animal, animālis, n.: animal

annuō, annuere, annuī, annūtum: nod, nod to, approve

annus, annī, m.: year

ante (prep. + acc.): before, in front of

antīquus, antīqua, antīquum: ancient

apertē (adv.): openly

apud (prep. + acc.): among, at the house of; with, at, among (compare the French preposition *chez*)

aqua, aquae, f.: water

arbor, arboris, f.: tree

ars, artis, f.: art, skill

asper, aspera, asperum: rough, difficult, harsh

astrum, astrī, n.: star

atque (conjunction): and

audāx, gen. audācis: daring, bold

audeō, audēre, ausus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): dare

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum: hear, listen to

auris, auris, f.: ear

autem: however, moreover

avārus, avāra, avārum: avaricious, greedy

bāsiō, bāsiāre, bāsiāvī, bāsiātum: kiss

bāsium, bāsī, n.: kiss

bellicōsus, bellicōsa, bellicōsum: warlike, relating to war, military

bellum, bellī, n.: war

bellus, bella, bellum: beautiful, pretty, handsome

bene (adverb): well

benignissimē, adv.: most kindly

bibō, bibere, bibī, bibitum: drink

bonus, bona, bonum: good

brevis, breve: brief, short

caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesum: cut, cut down, slay

caelestis, caeleste, third-declension adj.: heavenly

caelum, caeli, n.: sky, heaven

Caesar: Gaius Julius Caesar, politician, author, and conquerer of Gaul, famously assassinated on March 15 (the Ides), 44 B.C.E.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum: seize, capture

caput, capitis, n.: head

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum: seize, harvest, pluck

cārus, cāra, cārum: dear, precious, beloved

causā (ablative form of *causa* when accompanied by a genitive): for the sake/purpose of

celer, celeris, celere: swift, quick

cēna, cēnae, f.: dinner

cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātum: dine

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum: perceive

certus, certa, certum: certain, definite, sure

cēterī, cēterae, cētera: the remaining, the other, the rest

cibum: food

cibus, cibī, m.: food

cīvis, cīvis, m./f.: citizen

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.: state, city

clādēs, clādis, f.: destruction, defeat, disaster

clārus, clāra, clārum: clear, bright; famous

coepī, coepisse, coeptum: began (defective verb occurring only in the past tense; for present-tense system, use *incipiō*)

cognoscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, cognitum: become acquainted with, know

collum, collī, n.: neck

colō, colere, coluī, cultum: worship

commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātum: commend, approve, recommend

comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum: prepare, furnish, get ready

compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositum: arrange, settle

comprobō, comprobāre, comprobāvī, comprobātum: approve, sanction

cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfisus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): trust in (takes dative object), have confidence in

cōnfodiō, cōnfodere, cōnfōdī, cōnfossum: stab

congregō, congregāre, congregāvī, congregātum: gather together, assemble

coniūnx, coniugis, m. or f.: spouse

coniūrātī, coniūrātōrum, m.: conspirators

coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum: conspire

cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, n.: counsel, advice, plan, purpose

consuētūdō, consuētūdinis, f.: custom

contrā (prep. + accusative): against

cornū, cornūs, n.: horn

corpus, corporis, n.: body

crās (adv.): tomorrow

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum: believe, trust (takes dative object)

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum: increase, grow, augment

crūdēlis, crūdēle: cruel

cum (conj.): when, since, although (with subjunctive); whenever (with indicative)

cum (prep. + abl.): with

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum: desire, want

cūria, cūriae, f.: senate house

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum: run, rush

currus, currūs, m.: chariot

custodiō, custodire, custodivī, custoditum: guard, defend, protect

dē (prep. + ablative): about, concerning, from

dea, deae, f.: goddess (dative and ablative plural = *deābus*)

dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum: owe, ought (often with infinitive, e.g., *dēbeō dūcere* = I ought to lead)

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum: decide, decree

dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptum: deceive

dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum: erase, destroy

dēns, dentis, m.: tooth

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositum: put down, lay aside

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, desertum: desert, abandon

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsī: cease, stop

dēspiciō, dēspicere, dēspēxī, dēspectum: despise, look down on

deus, deī, m.: god

dī mănēs: divine spirits (in reference to the ancestral spirits of the deceased), divine spirit (although plural, can also be rendered in the singular to refer to a deceased individual)

dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictum: say, speak, tell

diēs, diēī, m. or f.: day

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum: differ

difficilis, difficile: hard, difficult

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum: esteem, love

dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī, dīmīssum: send away, dismiss, abandon

discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum: depart, go away

disciplīna, disciplīnae, f.: teaching, instruction

discipulī (m.), discipulae (f.): students

discō, discere, didicī: learn

dīvīnus, dīvīna, dīvīnum: of the gods, divine

dō, dare, dedī, datum: give, offer

doctrīna, doctrīnae, f.: teaching, learning

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrum: grieve, suffer, hurt

dolor, dolōris, m.: pain, grief

domina, dominae, f.: mistress

dominus, dominī, m.: master, lord

dōnum, dōnī, n.: gift

Druidēs, Druidum, m.: the Druids, the priests of the Celts in Gaul and Britain

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum: lead; consider, regard

dulcis, dulce: pleasant, sweet, agreeable

dum (conj.): while, as long as, provided that

dummodo (conj.): provided that, as long as

duo: two

dux, ducis: leader, guide, commander

edō, edere, ēdī, ēsum: eat

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum: bring out, expose, publish

ego, meī (personal pronoun; cf. App. §40): I, me

ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum: throw out, drive out

enim (conj.): for, indeed

eō, īre, īvī, ītum: go

eō: to that place, thither

epistula, epistulae, f.: letter, epistle

ergō (adv.): therefore

errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum: err, be mistaken, wander

est: is

et: and (et ... et: both ... and)

etiam (adv.): even, also

etsī (conj.): even if, although

ex (prep. + ablative): from, out of

exemplar, exemplāris, n.: example

exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum: go out, exit

exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātum: estimate, reckon, consider

exsilium, exsiliū, n.: banishment, exile

extinguō, extinguere, exstīnxī, exstīnctum: extinguish

facilis, facile: easy, agreeable

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum: do, make, cause, bring forth

fāma, fāmae, f.: rumor, report, fame, slander

familia, familiae, f.: family, household (*pater familiās* = father of the household; head of a Roman family)

fās (indeclinable noun), n.: religious law

fās est: it is religiously permissible, it is right, it is lawful

fatīgō, fatīgāre, fatīgāvī, fatīgātum: tire out, weary

fātum, fātī, n.: fate

fēlix, gen. fēlicis: happy, fortunate

fēmina, fēminae, f.: woman

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum: bear, carry, endure

fidēlis, fidēle: faithful, loyal

filia, filiae, f.: daughter (the dative and ablative plural are *filīabus* to distinguish the forms from the dative/ablative *filīis*, for “sons”)

filius, filiū, m.: son

finis, finis, m. or f.: end, limit, purpose

finitimus, finitima, finitimum: neighboring, adjoining (used substantively as noun = neighbor)

fīō, fierī, factus sum: happen, become; be made, be done; come into existence

flōrēs: flowers

flōs, flōris, m.: flower

flūmen, flūminis, n.: river

fōrma, fōrmae, f.: form, shape, beauty

forsitan (adv.): perhaps

fortis, forte: strong, brave

foveō, foveere, fōvī, fōtum: cherish, foster, nourish

frāter, frātris, m.: brother

fruor, fruī, fructus sum (+ abl.): enjoy, have the use and enjoyment of

fugiō, fugere, fūgī: flee, run away

Gallia: Gaul (corresponding geographically to modern France)

Gallus, Galla, Gallum: of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as noun: the Gauls, inhabiting Gaul, northern Italy, etc.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): rejoice

gaudium, gaudiū, n.: joy, delight

genū, genūs, n.: knee

Germānus, Germāna, Germānum: of Germany, German

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum: wage, conduct, carry on

gignō, gignere, genuī, genitum: produce, beget, bring forth

grātiā (ablative form of *gratia* when accompanied by a genitive): for the sake/purpose of

grātia, grātia, f.: favor, charm, grace

grātissimus, grātissima, grātissimum: most pleasing

gravis, grave: severe, serious, heavy, grievous

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum: have, hold; consider

habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum: dwell, reside, live; inhabit

herī (adv.): yesterday

hic, haec, hoc (demonstrative adj. and pron.): this, this one

hodiē (adv.): today

homō, hominis, m.: human being, person, man

hōra, hōrae, f.: hour, time

hortor, hortārī, hortātus, -a, -um sum (dep.): urge, encourage

hospes, hospitis, m.: guest, stranger; host

hostis, hostis, m.: enemy

hūmānus, hūmāna, hūmānum: human

iam (adv.): now, already, soon

iānua, iānuae, f.: door

ibi: there

īdem, eadem, idem: the same

ignis, ignis, m.: fire

ille, illa, illud (demonstrative adj. and pron.): that, that one

immortālis, immortalē (adj.): immortal

imperātor, imperātōris, m.: commander, emperor

imperium, imperiū, n.: authority, supreme power, power to command

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum: give orders to ; command

in (prep. + ablative): in, on; (prep. + accusative): into

inānis, ināne: empty, vain

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum: begin, commence

incrēdibilis, incrēdibile: incredible

inde: thence

indignus, indigna, indignum: unworthy

indulgēns, gen. indulgentis: lenient, gentle, kind, indulgent

ineō, inīre, inī, initum: go in, enter

inimīcus, inimīcī, m.: enemy

iniūria, iniūriae, f.: injury, injustice, wrong

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum: understand

inter (prep. + acc.): between, among

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum: kill, murder

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum: find, come upon

invidus, invida, invidum: envious

invītus, invīta, invītum: unwilling

invocō, invocāre, invocāvī, invocātum: call upon, invoke

ipse, ipsa, ipsum: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, the very

īra, īrae, f.: wrath, anger, ire

is, ea, id (as demonstrative adj.): this, that

is, ea, id (as personal pron.): he, she, it

iste, ista, istud (demonstrative adj. and pron.): that of yours, that (often used disparagingly)

ita (adv.): so, thus

item: likewise

iter, itineris, n.: journey

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum: order, command

iūdex, iūdicis, m.: judge

iūdicium, iūdicī, n.: judgment, decision, trial

iūs, iūris, n.: law, especially human law (as opposed to *fās*: divine law)

iussum, iussī, n.: order, command, law

iūstus, iūsta, iustum: just, righteous

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum: help, aid, assist

labor, labōris, m.: labor, work

laetus, laeta, laetum: happy, joyful

Latīnē (adv.): in Latin

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum: praise

lēgātus, lēgātī, m.: ambassador

legiō, legiōnis, f.: legion

legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum: read

lēx, lēgis, f.: law

liber, libera, liberum: free

liber, librī, m.: book

libertās, libertātis, f.: freedom, liberty

lingua, linguae, f.: language, tongue

linguam Latīnam (direct object form): Latin language (*linguae Latīnae* = of the Latin language)

liquor, liquōris, m.: liquid, fluid

locus, locī, m.: place

longus, longa, longum: long

loquor, loquī, locūtus, -a, -um sum (dep.): talk, speak

lūna, lūnae, f.: moon

lūx, lūcis, f.: light

magis (adv.): more

magister, magistrī, m. (magistra, magistrae, f.): teacher, schoolmaster/schoolmistress

magnus, magna, magnum: big, large, great

maior, maius/maximus, -a, -um: comp./superl. forms of *magnus*

male (adv.): poorly

mālō, mālī, mālū: prefer

malus, mala, malum: bad, wicked, evil

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum: remain, stay, abide

Mānēs, Mānium, m. or f.: departed spirits, the dead

manus, manūs (fourth declension), f.: hand, band, gang

mare, maris, n.: sea

māter, mātris, f.: mother

maximus, maxima, maximum: greatest, chief

melior, melius (comp. of *bonus*): better

memoria, memoriae, f.: memory, recollection

mendācium, mendāciū, n.: lie, falsehood, fiction

mēns, mentis, f.: mind

mēnsis, mēnsis, m.: month

metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum: fear, dread

meus, mea, meum: my

mīles, mīlitis, m.: soldier

mīrābilis, mīrābile: amazing, marvelous, astonishing

miser, misera, miserum: wretched, unfortunate, miserable

misericors, gen. misericordis: merciful, tenderhearted, compassionate

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum: send

mordeō, mordēre, momordī, morsus: bite

morior, morī, mortuus sum: die

mors, mortis, f.: death

mortuus, mortua, mortuum: dead

mōs, mōris, m.: custom, habit, manner, practice

mulier, mulieris, f.: woman

multum (adv.): very much

multus, multa, multum: much, many

nam: for, certainly, indeed

nascor, nascī, nātus, -a, -um sum: be born, arise

nāvis, nāvis, f.: ship

-ne (enclitic particle): attaches to the first word in the sentence to indicate that what follows is a question

nē ... quidem: not even, not so much as

nē: used with subjunctive verbs to express negative purpose (so that ... not)

nec (conj.): and not, nor

necesse est/erat/erit: it is/was/will be necessary

negō, negāre, negāvī, negātum: deny (used rather than *dīcō ... nōn* to introduce a negative indirect statement)

neque (conj.): and not; not even (neque ... neque = neither ... nor)

nequeō, nequīre, nequīvī, nequītum: be unable, not to be able (generally used where we might expect *nōn possum*)

neuter, neutra, neutrum: neither

nihil: nothing, not at all

nisi: if ... not, unless

nocturnus, nocturna, nocturnum: nocturnal, by night

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī: not want, be unwilling (*nōlī/nōlīte* + infinitive = negative imperative, e.g., *nōlī amāre* = don't love!)

nōn: not

nōnne: interrogative adverb introducing questions that expect a “yes” answer (*Nōnne mē amās?* = Don't you love me?)

nōs, nostrum (personal pronoun; App. §40): we, us

noster, nostra, nostrum: our, ours

novus, nova, novum: new

nox, noctis, f.: night

nūbēs, nūbis, f.: cloud

nūllus, nūlla, nūllum: no, not any, none

num: interrogative adverb introducing questions that expect a “no” answer

numerus, numerī, m.: number

numquam (adv.): never

nunc: now

obdūrō, obdūrāre, obdūrāvī, obdūrātum: be hard, be unfeeling; endure, persist

obligō, obligāre, obligāvī, obligātum: bind

oboediō, oboedīre, oboedīvī, oboedītum (+ dat.): obey, be subject to

occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsum: fall, fall down, go down, set

oculus, oculī, m.: eye

ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb, with perfect-system forms and present-tense meaning): hate

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum: bring to, present, offer; dedicate

omnis, omne: all, every

opera, operae, f.: work, pains (*dāre operam* = to give attention)

oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum: attack, assault, storm

ops, opis, f.: power, strength, property, assistance

optimus, optima, optimum (superl. of *bonus*): best

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m: order, arrangement, rank

pār, gen. paris: equal

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum: prepare, provide, obtain

partior, partīrī, partītus, -a, -um sum (dep.): share

parvus, parva, parvum: small, little (comp. = *minor, minus*; superl. = *minimus, -a, -um*)

passus, passūs, m.: step, pace

patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum: make open; disclose, expose

pateō, patēre, patuī: lie open, be open, be accessible, be evident

pater, patris, m.: father

patior, patī, passus, -a, -um sum (dep.): suffer, endure

paucī, paucae, pauca (plural adj.): few, a few

pāx, pācis, f.: peace (not an *i*-stem)

pecūnia, pecūniae, f.: money

peior, peius (comp. of *malus*): worse

per (prep. + acc.): through

peragō, peragere, perēgī, peractus: complete, carry out, accomplish

perīculum, perīculī, n.: danger, risk

perpetuus, perpetua, perpetuum: everlasting, never-ending

pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum: arrive, reach

pēs, pedis, m.: foot

pessimus, pessima, pessimum (superl. of *malus*): worst

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum: seek, ask for, beg

plācō, plācāre, plācāvī, plācātum: appease, soothe, calm, placate

poena, poenae, f.: penalty, punishment

poēta, poētae, m.: poet

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum: put, place, put aside, put away

pontifex/pontificēs, m.: priest/priests (*pontifex maximus* = chief priest)

populus, populī, m.: people, nation

possum, posse, potuī: be able

post (prep. + acc.): after

potēns, gen. potentis: mighty, powerful, strong

praesidium, praesidiū, n.: fort, defense

praesum, praesse, praefuī, praefutūrum: be in charge of; be responsible for (takes dative object)

praeter (prep. + accusative): besides, except, beyond

precor, precārī, precātus, -a, -um sum (dep.): pray, beg, entreat

prīncipium, prīncipiū, n.: beginning

prō (prep. + abl.): for, on behalf of, in front of, before

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum: go forward, advance, prosper

prōvidentia, prōvidentiae, f.: foresight, providence

prōvincia, prōvinciae, f.: province

puella, puellae, f.: girl

puer, puerī, m.: boy

pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī pugnātum: fight

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum: beautiful

pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī, pulsātum: strike, beat

pūniō, pūnīre pūnīvī, pūnītum: punish

putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum: think, judge, suppose, imagine

quā: by which route?, where?

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum: seek, look for, strive for

quālis, quāle: what sort of?

quam: than (in comparisons); as ... as possible (with superlatives)

quamvīs (conj.): although

quandō: when?

quantus, quanta, quantum: how large?, how great?, how much?, how many?

-que: attaches to a word to indicate “and” (*discipulī discipulaeque* = male students and female students)

queror, querī, questus sum: complain, lament, bewail

quī, quae, quod (interrogative adjective): what?, which?, what kind of? (forms match those of the relative pronoun)

quī, quae, quod (relative pronoun): who, which, that

quia (conj.): since, because

quid: what?

quis, quid (interrogative pronoun): who?, what?, which?

quō: to what place?, whither?

quot: how many?

quotiēns: how often?

rapidus, rapida, rapidum: fast, swift

ratio, ratiōnis: reckoning, account; reason; method

recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessum: depart, go away

recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum: receive, admit, regain

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum: give back, render, restore

relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum: leave, leave behind, abandon

reliquus, reliqua, reliquum: the rest of, the remaining, the other

remissiō, remissiōnis, f: release, letting go; forgiveness

repudium, repudiū, n.: casting off, divorce

requirō, requirere, requīsivī, requīsītum: seek, ask for, miss, need, require

rēs publica: republic, state

rēs, rei, f.: thing (any object of imagination or experience), matter, affair; deed; property, wealth

resideō, residēre, resēdī: remain, stay behind; reside, abide

rēx, rēgis, m.: king

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātum: ask, ask for

Rōma, Rōmae, f.: Rome

rūmor, rūmōris, m.: gossip, report

sacer, sacra, sacrum: sacred, consecrated, devoted

sacrificium, sacrificiū, n.: animal sacrifice

saeculum (or saeculum) saeculī, n.: age, generation; world

salvē (sing.), salvēte (pl.): greetings

sānctus, sāncta, sānctum: holy, sacred

sānus, sāna, sānum: sound, healthy, sane

sapiēns, gen. sapientis: wise, judicious

sapientia, sapientiae, f.: wisdom

scelestus, scelesta, scelestum: wicked, accursed

scientia, scientiae, f.: knowledge, science

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum: write, compose

sed (conjunction): but

semper (adv.): always

senātus, senātūs, m. (fourth-declension noun): senate

senex, senis, m.: old man

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsū: feel, perceive

sēparō, sēparāre, sēparāvī, sēparātum: separate, divide

sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelīvī, sepultum: bury

sequor, sequī, secūtus, -a, -um sum (dep.): follow

servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum: save, keep, preserve

servus, servī, m.: slave

sevērissimē, adv.: most severely

sevērus, sevēra, sevērum: stern, severe

sī (conj.): if

silva, silvae, f.: forest, wood

sōl, sōlis, m.: sun

soleō, solēre, solitus, -a, -um sum (semi-dep.): be accustomed

sōlus, sōla, solum: only, alone

solvō,olvere, solvī, solūtus: release, loosen, unbind

soror, sorōris, f.: sister

stō, stāre, stetī, statum: stand

studeō, studēre, studuī: be eager for, concentrate on, study (takes dative object)

studium, studiū, n.: study, pursuit, eagerness

stultus, stulta, stultum: foolish, stupid

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum: advise, recommend, urge, persuade

sub (prep. + ablative): under

sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum: hold up, support; endure, suffer

suī (gen.), sibi (dat.), sē, sē (reflexive pronoun): him/her/it/them; himself/herself/itself/themselves (in reference to the main subject)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrum: be

suus, sua, suum (reflexive possessive): his/her/its/their own (in reference to the main subject)

taberna, tabernae, f.: booth, stall, inn, tavern

tālis, tāle: such, of such a sort

tam (adv., often introducing result clause): so, to such a degree

tandem: at length, at last, finally

tantus, tanta, tantum: so large, so great

tellūs, tellūris, f.: earth, globe; ground

tempus, temporis, n.: time

terra, terrae, f.: earth, ground, land

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum: frighten, terrify

testis, testis, m. or f.: witness

timeō, timēre, timuī: fear, be afraid of

timor, timōris, m.: fear

tōtus, tōta, tōtum: whole, entire

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē (personal pronoun; App. §40): you (sing.)

tueor, tuērī, tūtus, -a, -um sum: watch over, guard

tuus, tua, tuum: your, yours (singular)

ubi: where?

ūllus, ūlla, ūllum: any

ultimus, ultima, ultimum: last, final; extreme

ūltiō, ūltiōnis, f.: vengeance, revenge

ultrā (prep. + acc.): beyond

umquam (adv.): ever

unde: from what source?, whence?

ūnus, ūna, ūnum: one

urbs, urbis, f.: city

ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustum: burn

ut: used with subjunctive verbs to express purpose (so that ...)

uter, utra, utrum: which (of two things), either

utrum ... an: whether ... or

uxor, uxōris, f.: wife

vae tē: woe is you

valē (sing.), valēte (pl.): be well, farewell

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrum: be strong, have power, be valid; be well, fare well

-ve (conjunction added to end of word): or

vehemēns, gen. vehementis: furious, violent, harsh, strong

vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditum: sell

venēnum, venēnī, n.: potion, drug, poison

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum: come

verberō, verberāre, verberāvī, verberātum: beat, strike, lash

verbum, verbī, n.: word

vereor, verērī, veritus,-a, -um sum (dep.): fear, respect

vērītās, vērītātis, f.: truth

vērō (adv.): in truth, indeed

vester, vestra, vestrum: your, yours (pl.)

via, viae, f.: street, road, way

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum: see, discern

vīlla, villae, f.: villa, country house

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum: conquer

vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī, vindicātum: punish, avenge

vīnum, vīnī, n.: wine

vir, virī, m.: man

virgō, virginis, f.: young woman, maiden (*virgō Vestālis* = Vestal priestess)

virtūs, virtūtis, f.: strength, courage

vīta, vītae, f.: life

vitium, vitii, n.: vice

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum: live

vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātum: call, summon

volō, velle, voluī: want, wish, be willing

vōx, vōcis, f.: voice (not an *i*-stem)

Vulcānus, Vulcānī, m.: fire (-god)

vulnus, vulneris, n.: wound

Answer Key

Note: Macrons (long marks over vowels) are given for reference. You are encouraged to become familiar with the use of macrons, but your answers do not need to include them.

Lecture 2

I.

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō or -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

II.

	Singular	Plural
1	agō	agimus
2	agis	agitis
3	agit	agunt

III.

	Singular	Plural
1	pōnō	pōnimus
2	pōnis	pōnitis
3	pōnit	pōnunt

	Singular	Plural
1	bibō	bibimus
2	bibis	bibitis
3	bibit	bibunt

	Singular	Plural
1	vincō	vincimus
2	vincis	vincitis
3	vincit	vincunt

IV.

1. dīcere 2. pōne 3. pōnite 4. bibere 5. editē 6. vendimus 7. agere 8. agit 9. age 10. vincere 11. vincunt 12. bibunt 13. caedimus 14. caedisne 15. editis

V.

1. Caesar says (is saying/does say). 2. We say (are saying/do say). 3. Speak, women! 4. Caesar wages (is waging/does wage) war. 5. Caesar cuts (is cutting/does cut) the flowers. 6. The soldiers cut (are cutting/do cut) the flowers. 7. Put away the flowers, soldiers, and conquer! 8. The soldiers eat (are eating/do eat) the food. 9. The priests drink (are drinking/do drink) the wine. 10. I sell (am selling/do sell) the slave. 11. Conquer, Caesar! 12. Wage war, soldiers! 13. We eat (are eating/do eat) the food and drink (are drinking/do drink) the wine. 14. Are you eating (do you eat) the food? 15. Do you drink (are you drinking) wine?

Note: As indicated in the key for exercise V, the present-tense indicative may be translated “verbs,” “is verbing,” or “does verb.” From this point forward, the answer key will offer only one of these three possibilities, but you may select any of them for your translations of the present-tense indicative.

Lecture 3

I.

	Singular	Plural
1	-ō or -m	-mus
2	-s	-tis
3	-t	-nt

II.

	Singular	Plural
1	vīvō	vīvimus
2	vīvis	vīvitis
3	vīvit	vīvunt

III.

	Singular	Plural
1	vīvam	vīvāmus
2	vīvās	vīvātis
3	vīvat	vīvant

IV.

Note: From this point forward, the answer key will not provide verb charts, but you are encouraged to continue to create your own verb charts, as indicated in the drills, throughout the course.

1. singular: pōnam, pōnās, pōnat/plural: pōnāmus, pōnātis, pōnant
2. dēsinō, dēsinis, dēsinit/dēsiniimus, dēsinitis, dēsiniunt
3. discō, discis, discit/discimus, discitis, discunt
4. bibam, bibās, bibat/bibāmus, bibātis, bibant

V.

1. we drink
2. let us drink (we may drink/we should drink)
3. they are learning
4. let them learn (they may learn/they should learn)
5. you cease
6. you may cease (you should cease)

Note: As indicated in the key for exercise V, the present-tense subjunctive may be translated “let verb,” “may verb,” or “should verb.” (In actual Latin sentences, context often determines or suggests the best alternative.)

From this point forward, the answer key will offer only one of these three possibilities, but you may select any of them for your translations of the present tense subjunctive.

VI.

1. Mulierēs discunt. 2. Discant mulierēs. 3. Linguam Latīnam discāmus. 4. Dēšine! 5. Dēšinite! 6. Edunt mīlitēs ut vīvant. 7. Edat bibatque mīles. 8. Bibāmus ut vīvāmus. 9. Vincit Caesar. 10. Caesar vincat. 11. Fīat lūx! 12. Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque!

Note: As indicated in the key for exercise VI, word order in Latin is variable. For example, verbs may come at the beginning, middle, or end of a sentence, and a noun subject may be found anywhere in the sentence—not necessarily at the beginning. As you check your sentence translations against the answer key, focus less on word order and more on noun, adjective, and verb forms and endings. The professor discusses word order at various points in the course.

Lecture 4

I.

legō, legis, legit/legimus, legitis, legunt

II.

sum, es, est/sumus, estis, sunt

III.

1. possum, potes, potest/possumus, potestis, possunt

2. sim, sīs, sit/sīmus, sītis, sint

3. legam, legās, legat/legāmus, legātis, legant

4. possim, possīs, possit/possīmus, possītis, possint

IV.

1. Potest. 2. Possit. 3. Sunt. 4. Sint. 5. Possumus legere. 6. Possīmus legere. 7. Mulierēs discere possunt. 8. Possuntne vincere mīlitēs? 9. Possuntne discipulī discipulaeque linguam Latīnam discere? 10. Estis mīlitēs, sed mīlitēs nōn sumus. 11. Esne mīles? 12. Sit.

V.

1. Caesar can deceive the Roman people. 2. Take care, so that you may be well! 3. We drink and eat so that we may be able to live well. 4. If there is light, we can drink. 5. The soldiers are able to conquer but they do not conquer. 6. Life is short. 7. Art can be long (lasting). 8. To be is to be able. 9. You can read well, (female) students. 10. They are not soldiers.

Lecture 5

I.

1. reddō, reddis, reddit/reddimus, redditis, reddunt
2. prōcēdam, prōcēdās, prōcēdat/prōcēdāmus, prōcēdātis, prōcēdant
3. sum, es, est/sumus, estis, sunt
4. possim, possīs, possit/possīmus, possītis, possint

II.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	***	-ēs
Genitive	-is	-um
Dative	-ī	-ibus
Accusative	-em	-ēs
Ablative	-e	-ibus

III.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles	mīlitēs
Genitive	mīlitis	mīlitum
Dative	mīlitī	mīlitibus
Accusative	mīlitem	mīlitēs
Ablative	mīlite	mīlitibus

IV.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	virtūs	virtūtēs
Genitive	virtūtis	virtūtum
Dative	virtūtī	virtūtibus
Accusative	virtūtem	virtūtēs
Ablative	virtūte	virtūtibus

V.

Note: From this point forward, the answer key will not provide noun charts, but you are encouraged to continue to create your own noun charts, as indicated in the drills, throughout the course.

1. singular: lūx, lūcis, lūcī, lūcem, lūce/plural: lūcēs, lūcum, lūcibus, lūcēs, lūcibus

2. vēritās, vēritātis, vēritātī, vēritātem, vēritāte/vēritātēs, vēritātum, vēritātibus, vēritātēs, vēritātibus

VI.

1. genitive singular, of the truth 2. ablative singular, by/with/from the light 3. nominative plural, the soldiers verb OR accusative plural, verb the soldiers 4. genitive plural, of the soldiers 5. genitive singular, of Caesar 6. dative

plural, to/for the months OR ablative plural, by/with/from the months 7. dative singular, to/for the truth 8. dative singular, to/for Caesar 9. genitive plural, of the lights 10. ablative singular, by/with/from strength

VII.

1. Mīlitēs Caesaris vincunt. 2. Caesar mīlitī dīcit vērītātem. 3. Prēcēdāmus! 4. Sit vērītās lūx mentis. 5. Vīrtūs mīlitum est magna. 6. Mentis virtūte discit mulier. 7. Caesarī laudem reddite! 8. Reddāmus laudem vērītātī. 9. Caesarem dēcipere mīlitēs nōn possunt. 10. Vērītātem discere nōn possumus.

Lecture 6

I.

1. sum, es, est/sumus, estis, sunt
2. bibō, bibis, bibit/bibimus, bibitis, bibunt
3. possum, potes, potest/possumus, potestis, possunt

II.

1. sim, sīs, sit/sīmus, sītis, sint
2. bibam, bibās, bibat/bibāmus, bibātis, bibant
3. possim, possīs, possit/possīmus, possītis, possint

III.

1. mulier, mulieris, mulierī, mulierem, muliere/mulierēs, mulierum, mulieribus, mulierēs, mulieribus
2. corpus, corporis, corporī, corpus, corpore/corpora, corporum, corporibus, corpora, corporibus

3. flōs, flōris, flōrī, flōrem, flōre/flōrēs, flōrum, flōribus, flōrēs, flōribus

IV.

corpus, corporis, corporī, corpus, corpore/corpora, corporum, corporibus, corpora, corporibus

V.

1. corporibus mīlitum 2. virtūte mulieris 3. hostibus Caesaris 4. lūce mentis 5. Mulierēs liquōrem bibunt. 6. Hostēs cum mīlite pugnant. 7. Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque linguae Latīnae! 8. Pōnant flōrēs mulierēs. 9. Possumusne flōrēs caedere? 10. Edāmus ut virtūtem reddāmus.

Lecture 7

I.

Case	1 st Declension Feminine	2 nd Declension Masculine	2 nd Declension Neuter
Singular			
Nominative	-a	-us/-er	-um
Genitive	-ae	-ī	-ī
Dative	-ae	-ō	-ō
Accusative	-am	-um	-um
Ablative	-ā	-ō	-ō
Plural			
Nominative	-ae	-ī	-a
Genitive	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum
Dative	-īs	-īs	-īs
Accusative	-ās	-ōs	-a
Ablative	-īs	-īs	-īs

II.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	mīles bonus	mīlitēs bonī
Genitive	mīlitis bonī	mīlitum bōnorum
Dative	mīlitī bonō	mīlitibus bonīs
Accusative	mīlitem bonum	mīlitēs bonōs
Ablative	mīlite bonō	mīlitibus bonīs

III.

1. corpus magnum, corporis magnī, corporī magnō, corpus magnum, corpore magnō/corpora magna, corporum magnōrum, corporibus magnīs, corpora magna, corporibus magnīs

2. mulier pulchra, mulieris pulchrae, mulierī pulchrae, mulierem pulchram, muliere pulchrā/mulierēs pulchrae, mulierum pulchrārum, mulieribus pulchrīs, mulierēs pulchrās, mulieribus pulchrīs

IV.

1. genitive singular, of the good woman 2. ablative singular, by/with/from great strength 3. dative singular, to/for the most pleasing light 4. accusative singular, verb everlasting night 5. nominative plural, beautiful minds verb 6. accusative plural, verb the free soldiers 7. dative plural, to/for the everlasting months OR ablative plural, by/with/from the everlasting months 8. nominative singular, the stern enemy verbs 9. genitive plural, of the beautiful women 10. accusative singular, verb the good old man 11. nominative plural, the large bodies verb OR accusative plural, verb the large bodies 12. nominative plural, the beautiful flowers verb 13. genitive plural, of the great lights 14. dative plural to/for the severe truths OR ablative plural, by/with/from the severe truths 15. dative singular, to/for the good soldier

Lecture 8

I.

1. pontifex maximus, pontificis maximī, pontificī maximō, pontificem maximum, pontifice maximō/pontificēs maximī, pontificum maximōrum, pontificibus maximīs, pontificēs maximōs, pontificibus maximīs

2. astrum aeternum, astrī aeternī, astrō aeternō, astrum aeternum, astrō aeternō/astra aeterna, astrōrum aeternōrum, astrīs aeternīs, astra aeterna, astrīs aeternīs

3. fēmina misera, fēminae miserae, fēminae miserae, fēminam miseram, fēminā miserā/fēminae miserae, fēminārum miserārum, fēminīs miserīs, fēminās miserās, fēminīs miserīs

4. agricola miser, agricolae miserī, agricolae miserō, agricolam miserum, agricolā misero/agricolae miserī, agricolārum miserōrum, agricolīs miserīs, agricolās miserōs, agricolīs miserīs

II.

1. virginī pulchrae 2. bellō magnō 3. ignis magnī 4. puerōrum bonōrum 5. bāsia grātissima 6. fēminārum liberārum 7. servō sevērō 8. ignibus aeternīs 9. puellās bonās 10. noctis aeternae

III.

1. The women's slaves read well. 2. The wretched boy lives badly. 3. Let the wretched maidens drink. 4. The stern soldiers wage a great war. 5. Let the fire be great. (Let there be a great fire.) 6. Can the good farmers sell (their) food? 7. Let the good old man speak truth to the chief priest. 8. Cut the beautiful flowers!

Lecture 9

I.

-ō (or -m), -s, -t/-mus, -tis, -nt

II.

-r, -ris, -tur/-mur, -mini, -ntur

III.

1. color, coleris, colitur/colimur, colimini, coluntur

2. dēsinar, dēsināris, dēsinātur/dēsināmur, dēsināminī, dēsinantur

3. legam, legās, legat/legāmus, legātis, legant

4. dūcō, dūcis, dūcit/dūcimus, dūcitis, dūcunt

5. mittar, mittāris, mittātur/mittāmur, mittāminī, mittantur

IV.

1. mittor 2. mittar 3. mittimus 4. dūcāmus 5. dūce! 6. dūcantur 7. vendī 8. venditis 9. venditur 10. agiminī! 11. agere 12. agam

V.

The ablative of agent requires a preposition (a/ab); it expresses the person by whom an action is performed. Dūcitur ā Caesarō = ablative of agent.

The ablative of means requires no preposition; it expresses the tool or instrument (generally inanimate) by means of which an action is performed. Dūcitur vērītāte = ablative of means.

VI.

1. Mīlitēs dūcuntur ā Caesare. 2. Potest vērītate dūcī.

Lecture 10**I.**

1. capiō, capis, capit/capimus, capitis, capiunt
2. fugiam, fugiās, fugiat/fugiāmus, fugiātis, fugiant
3. sentiam, sentiās, sentiat/sentiāmus, sentiātis, sentiant
4. veniō, venīs, venit/venīmus, venītis, veniunt

II.

1. Veniant. 2. Venīmus. 3. Fugite! 4. Capiat. 5. Cupere. 6. Ades! 7. Adestis. 8. Custōdīte! 9. Custōdit. 10. Sentiam.

III.

mulier laeta, mulieris laetae, mulierī laetae, mulierem laetam, muliere laetā/
mulierēs laetae, mulierum laetārum, mulieribus laetīs, mulierēs laetās,
mulieribus laetīs

IV.

1. They are not able to come to Bethlehem. 2. Are we able to come to Bethlehem? 3. Let them come to Bethlehem. 4. The great legion is able to protect the city. 5. Let the old man guard the truth. 6. Are the severe soldiers able to conquer Caesar's enemies? 7. Let us flee from the city. 8. We are fleeing from the city. 9. The soldiers are coming so that they may guard the city. 10. The students (male or a mixed group) desire to learn the beautiful Latin language so that they may be happy.

Lecture 11

I.

rēx bonus, rēgis bonī, rēgī bonō, rēgem bonum, rēge bonō/rēgēs bonī, rēgum bonōrum, rēgibus bonīs, rēgēs bonōs, rēgibus bonīs

II.

1. -āre 2. -ēre 3. -ere 4. -ere 5. -īre

III.

1. audiō, audīs, audit/audīmus, audītis, audiunt

2. amō, amās, amat/amāmus, amātis, amant

3. habeam, habeās, habeat/habeāmus, habeātis, habeant

4. videō, vidēs, videt/vidēmus, vidētis, vident

5. adōrem, adōrēs, adōret/adōrēmus, adōrētis, adōrent

IV.

1. Dominum magnum adōrāmus. 2. Adōret rēgem bonum. 3. Vidē rēgem angelōrum! 4. Legiōnēs rēgis audire potest. 5. Amāsne mīlitem pulchrum? 6. Virtūtem mulieris magnae laudētis. 7. Vēritātem laudant. 8. Vēritātem amā, Caesar! 9. Laeta nōn est, et populum Rōmānum dēcipit. 10. Rēgem magnum nōn vidēmus, sed virtūtem mīlitum sentīre possumus. 11. Dominum sevērū amāre nōn possumus. 12. Legat dominus librōs bonōs, ut vēritātem amet. 13. Virtūtem mentis nōn habet. 14. Habeāmus cibum vīnumque! 15. Veniunt in Bethlehem, ut rēgem adōrent.

Lecture 12

I.

1. vīvō, vīvis, vīvit/vīvimus, vīvitis, vīvunt
2. amem, amēs, amet/amēmus, amētis, ament
3. aestimem, aestimēs, aestimēt/aestimēmus, aestimētis, aestiment
4. amo, amās, amāt/amāmus, amātis, amant
5. vīvam, vīvās, vīvat/vīvāmus, vīvātis, vīvant

II.

1. sum, es, est/sumus, estis, sunt
2. possim, possīs, possit/possīmus, possītis, possint

III.

1. disce, discite: Learn! 2. adōrā, adōrāte: Adore! 3. habē, habēte: Have! 4. potes, poteste: Be able! 5. audī, audīte: Hear!

IV.

lūx perpetua, lūcis perpetuae, lūcī perpetuae, lūcem perpetuam, lūce perpetuā/lūcēs perpetuae, lūcum perpetuārum, lūcibus perpetuīs, lūcēs perpetuās, lūcibus perpetuīs

V.

1. Vīvāmus. 2. Ament. 3. Amant. 4. Senem audiāmus. 5. Vēritātem senex audit. 6. Vīnum dominī laudat. 7. Rēgem meum audīte! 8. Occīdit sōl. 9. Amāsne fēminam alteram? 10. Lūcem legiōnēs miserī nōn vident.

Lecture 13

I.

1. laudō, laudās, laudat/laudāmus, laudātis, laudant
2. videar, videāris, videātur/videāmur, videāminī, videantur
3. sentior, sentīris, sentītur/sentīmur, sentīminī, sentiuntur
4. congregem, congregēs, congreget/congregēmus, congregētis, congregent
5. habeō, habēs, habet/habēmus, habētis, habent
6. audiar, audiāris, audiātur/audiāmur, audiāminī, audiantur

II.

1. Puella ūnum puerum amat. 2. Multae puellae ā puerō amantur. 3. Puerum pulchrum virgo misera amāre dēsinat. 4. Senēs bonī ā Caesare audiantur. 5. Caesar ā mīlitibus nōn audītur. 6. Agricolaē laetī in urbe congregant. 7. Congregāte, servī! 8. Sub magnā ulmō congregāmur. 9. Urbēs ā legiōnibus imperātōris custōdiantur. 10. Vidērisne ā fēminā? 11. Vidētisne puerum alterum in aquā? 12. Possuntne hostēs capī? 13. Ā discipulis audīrī nōn possum. 14. Deī laudentur! 15. Lūx vērītātis ā rēge nōn vidētur.

Lecture 14

I.

1. poēta audāx, poētae audācis, poētae audācī, poētā audācem, poētā audācī/poētae audācēs, poētārum audācium, poētis audācibus, poētās audācēs, poētis audācibus
2. vir fortis, virī fortis, virō fortī, virum fortem, virō fortī/virī fortēs, virōrum fortium, virīs fortibus, virōs fortēs, virīs fortibus

3. vulnus ācre, vulneris ācris, vulnerī acrī, vulnus ācre, vulnere ācrī/vulnera ācria, vulnerum ācrium, vulneribus ācribus, vulnera ācria, vulneribus ācribus

II.

1. linguae facilis 2. legiōnibus ācribus 3. sub caelō pulchrō 4. in magnō dolōre 5. corporibus fortibus 6. puellārum audācium 7. mēnsēs brevēs 8. mente fortī 9. bella facilia 10. in ācrem hostis urbem

III.

1. The wound causes pain for the soldier. 2. Let us praise the courage of the brave women. 3. The truth can be learned from bitter grief(s). 4. Students of the Latin language have keen minds. 5. Beautiful flowers are brought forth by the sun's light. 6. Strong, good men are being killed in the fierce war. 7. The (female) slaves of the fierce master are being gathered into the wretched place. 8. Be strong, boys and girls! 9. Let us worship the eternal God, not brief life. 10. It is not easy to discern the truth.

Lecture 15

I.

1. mare magnum, maris magnī, marī magnō, mare magnum, marī magnō/maria magna, marium magnōrum, maribus magnīs, maria magna, maribus magnīs

2. urbs magna, urbis magnae, urbī magnae, urbem magnam, urbe magnā/urbēs magnae, urbium magnārum, urbibus magnīs, urbēs magnās, urbibus magnīs

II.

1. The city's women desire peace. 2. The enemies are coming in (or by) ships across the sea in order to wage a great war. 3. The truth cannot be perceived by the wretched men. 4. There are fierce animals in the forest but at night

I am protected by Caesar's soldier. 5. Let us overcome the grief of (these) never-ending nights! 6. Rumors are not heard by a good king.

III.

1. Virginis artem poëta magnus laudat. 2. Bellum agere dēsinat et in pāce vivāmus laetī. 3. Multa animālia ab alterō agricolā venduntur. 4. Vōcem dominī audīre nōn potest senex. 5. Servī magnīs in nāvibus ā legiōnum imperātōre congregantur.

Lecture 16

I.

Please see the chart in the lecture summary for the correct forms of the relative pronoun. It may also be found in App. §46.

B

1. The girl who loves the beautiful boy is happy. 2. The old man to whom we are giving food is wretched. 3. The enemies against whom we fight are fierce. 4. The field in which the poets are assembling is large. 5. The man whose daughter you praise, O farmer, is stern. 6. He is the father of the boy whom I adore. 7. The legions are guarding the city in which we live. 8. Do you worship the immortal gods about whom the chief priest is telling the truth? 9. The truth that we discern is eternal. 10. The commander leads many (men), among whom is my son.

b

1. Potestisne astrum vidēre quod videō? 2. Rēgis ācris mīlitēs audīmus, ā quō urbs pulchra vincitur. 3. Virginum virtus quās laudant magna est. 4. Vīnum quod bibis grātissimum est. 5. Agricola ā cuius mātrem laudāmur fīlium amat, sed fīliam nōn habet.

Lecture 17

I.

1. rogābam, rogābās, rogābat/rogābāmus, rogābātis, rogābant 2. intellegar, intellegēris, intellegētur/intellegēmur, intellegēminī, intellegentur 3. requīram, requīrēs, requīret/requīrēmus, requīrētis, requīrent 4. dēcipiēbar, dēcipiēbāris, dēcipiēbātur/dēcipiēbāmur, dēcipiēbāminī, dēcipiēbantur 5. manēbō, manēbis, manēbit/manēbimus, manēbitis, manēbunt 6. laudābor, laudāberis, laudābitur/laudābimur, laudābiminī, laudābuntur 7. cupiēbam, cupiēbās, cupiēbat/cupiēbāmus, cupiēbātis, cupiēbant 8. dolērem, dolērēs, dolēret/dolērēmus, dolērētis, dolērent 9. intellegerer, intellegerēris, intellegerētur/intellegerēmur, intellegerēminī, intellegerentur

II.

1. manēbam 2. requīrēris 3. rogābant 4. intellegētur 5. dolēbātis 6. dolērēmus 7. colēbat 8. colēbātur 9. colēris 10. custōdiēbāmus 11. bibent 12. habēbō 13. habēbat 14. dēcipientur 15. ederet 16. Fugiēbātisne? 17. Discetne? 18. dēsineret 19. dābunt 20. vendēbātur

Lecture 18

I.

1. recēdam, recēdēs, recēdet/recēdēmus, recēdētis, recēdent 2. obdūrārem, obdūrārēs, obdūrāret/obdūrārēmus, obdūrārētis, obdūrārent 3. āmittēbar, āmittēbāris, āmittēbātur/ āmittēbāmur, āmittēbāminī, āmittēbantur

II.

cīvitās bellicōsa, cīvitātis bellicōsae, cīvitātī bellicōsae, cīvitātem bellicōsam, cīvitāte bellicōsā/cīvitātēs bellicōsae, cīvitātum bellicōsārum, cīvitātibus bellicōsīs, cīvitātēs bellicōsās, cīvitātibus bellicōsīs

III.

1. We will not fear the ultimate end of life. 2. Will the girl desert the handsome farmer whom she now (recently) used to love? 3. The Roman soldiers were fighting against (their) warlike enemies with great courage. 4. You will remain in the city with (your) daughter but I will go away into a neighboring province. 5. One who fears death misses the joy of life. 6. Skill (art) in (of) the Latin language will never abandon you. 7. I will not pursue the unwilling boy and he will grieve when he is not pursued. 8. Persist (be hard)! The danger is great and we women are few, but we will be able to protect the city. 9. The warlike mind of the king will bring forth grief among the people. 10. Let us stop praising war and let us live both in peace and with great joy.

Lecture 19

I.

lēx tua, lēgis tuae, lēgī tuae, lēgem tuam, lēge tuā/lēgēs tuae, lēgum tuārum, lēgibus tuīs, lēgēs tuās, lēgibus tuīs

II.

1. *dīmīttor, dīmītteris, dīmīttitur/dīmīttimur, dīmīttiminī, dīmīttuntur*

2. *dēspiciar, dēspiciāris, dēspiciātur/dēspiciāmur, dēspiciāminī, dēspiciantur*

III.

1. Can a foolish person live well? 2. May your father's teaching, which is your charm, be praised. 3. The (female) students are learning the Latin language so that they may have good (sound) knowledge. 4. Don't have fear, my daughter! 5. The foolish sons are abandoning the wisdom of their good mother. 6. The king who wishes to conquer gives few laws. 7. It is easy to deceive a man (the sort of man) who despises the truth. 8. The enemies are gathering in your city in order to conspire against the state. 9. Beautiful

flowers are being added to the girls' heads. 10. We perceive the beauty of God in the master's instruction.

Lecture 20

I.

See the charts in the lecture summary for the correct forms of the demonstrative adjectives/pronouns.

II.

1. illōrum hominum 2. huic sapientiae 3. illō timōre 4. huius fēminae 5. eī 6. haec capita 7. illōrum rēgum 8. illī poētae 9. sub hāc nūbe 10. eam 11. illud corpus 12. illīs puerīs 13. in hanc urbem 14. in hīs ignibus 15. dē illō sene

III.

1. Do you see the maidservant of this master? 2. These kisses are very pleasing to that farmer. 3. This man whom Caesar will want to seize used to protect the life of the whole city. 4. Will you give those good books to this girl? 5. The poet himself will remain in this beautiful field. 6. I myself (fem.) cannot tell this to any student (literally: I myself [fem.] can tell this to no student). 7. Dismiss this boy and call the son of the other woman. 8. Your emperor will wage war against that wretched city. 9. (As) a boy, I used to esteem that poet but now, (as) an old man, I despise him. 10. These soldiers whom you see were drinking wine that night. 11. We will not praise that man because his law will destroy the republic. 12. Will those foolish men praise the wisdom of this priest? 13. The beauty of that boy was evident to them. 14. Your mother will cut these beautiful flowers, which we will give to that woman. 15. The voices of these slaves will not be heard by the stern king.

Lecture 21

I.

1. cucurrī, cucurristī, cucurrit/cucurrimus, cucurristis, cucurrērunt 2. cucurrerim, cucurrerīs, cucurrerit/cucurrerīmus, cucurrerītis, cucurrerint 3. cucurreram, cucurrerās, cucurrerat/ cucurrerāmus, cucurrerātis, cucurrerant 4. cucurrerō, cucurreris, cucurrerit/cucurrerimus, cucurreritis, cucurrerint 5. cucurrissem, cucurrissēs, cucurrisset/cucurrissēmus, cucurrissētis, cucurrissent

II.

1. Illa ancilla fidēlis dominam laudāvit. 2. Dux magnus multa bella gesserat. 3. Hunc cibum ēderimus. 4. Illōs deōs colēbant. 5. Librōs illīus puellae patrī eius dedimus. 6. Istī contrā ducēs huius urbis coniūrāverant. 7. Imperātor pācem cum hostibus vestrīs composuit. 8. Vīderis grātiam huius virī quem adōrō.

III.

1. These slaves used to have (experience) great suffering. 2. That leader's soldiers were able to guard the ships. 3. The wine that you gave him was very pleasing to the chief priest. 4. Did you hear what I heard? 5. The citizens were gathering so that they might hear this woman. 6. The maidservants had run out of the villa so that they might see the legions. 7. The poet will praise the master's beauty so that he can remain in this beautiful villa. 8. The brief years have fled. 9. We will have summoned the farmer's daughters so that they may learn the truth. 10. The laws of that (despicable) king had given (bestowed) severe labors to (upon) the citizens.

Lecture 22

I.

1. interficiar, interficiēris, interficiētur/interficiēmur, interficiēminī, interficientur 2. interfēcissem, interfēcissēs, interfēcisset/interfēcissēmus,

interfēcissētis, interfēcissent 3. interfēcī, interfēcistī, interfēcit/interfēcimus, interfēcistis, interfēcērunt 4. interficiēbar, interficiēbāris, interficiēbātur/interficiēbāmur, interficiēbāminī, interficiēbantur

II.

ōrdō novus, ōrdinis novī, ōrdinī novō, ōrdinem novum, ōrdine novō/ōrdinēs novī, ōrdinum novōrum, ōrdinibus novīs, ōrdinēs novōs, ōrdinibus novīs

III.

1. aurēs audientēs 2. vīnum bibitum 3. mīlitī caesurō 4. duce dēcipientī 5. rēgis interfectī 6. vulnera sēnsa 7. deōs colendōs 8. urbe captā 9. sorōrī annuentī 10. in sōlem occidentem 11. meī frātris vocātūrī 12. hostibus vīsīs

IV.

1. Let us not praise the leader who wages the war. (Let us not praise the leader waging war.) 2. Because the city has been conquered, the citizens are wretched. (The city having been conquered, the citizens are wretched.) 3. This work is most pleasing to minds that love wisdom. (This work is most pleasing to minds loving wisdom.) 4. Tomorrow we will see those men who are going to destroy the republic. (Tomorrow we will see those men about to destroy the republic.) 5. Because the slaves were captured yesterday, that master is happy today. (With the slaves having been captured yesterday ...) 6. Many girls had run to the woman who was giving gifts. 7. What do you need now that your sister has been restored? 8. The boy, whom I see standing near the door of the villa, is beautiful. Is he your brother? 9. Having put aside our grief (literally: with our grief having been put aside), let the new year begin! 10. Can you esteem leaders who despise our laws?

Lecture 23

I.

pater territus, patris territī, patrī territō, patrem territum, patre territō/patrēs territī, patrum territōrum, patribus territīs, patrēs territōs, patribus territīs

II.

1. errāvisse; to have erred 2. dēbērī; to be owed 3. territūrus esse; to be going to frighten 4. cultus esse; to have been worshiped 5. agī; to be done

III.

1. Errāre hūmānum est. 2. Amīcum meum iuvāre necesse erat. 3. Eī pecūniam dedisse potēs. 4. Ab illō vidērī cupiēmus. 5. Populum victūrum esse dīxit rēx. 6. Dīxī magistrum discipulās dēcēpisse. 7. Hominēs deam colere dēbēre dīcit pontifex maximus. 8. Virtūtem habēre necesse esse dīcet māter mea.

IV.

1. That old man does not desire to flee from the city. 2. We ought not to frighten these boys. 3. With the women standing in the road, were you able to help the girls? 4. Because their fires had been extinguished, we were not able to see the enemies. 5. It was necessary to have praised the poet but this student had said nothing. 6. He says that your friends saw many animals wandering in the fields. 7. These girls said that those maidservants had been frightened by the stern master. 8. After the food was eaten, the soldiers desired to drink the farmers' wine. 9. Our father said that those wicked citizens were going to kill the loyal priest. 10. The leader who was himself about to wage war always used to say that the nation would not suffer.

Lecture 24

I.

1. praesim, praesīs, praesit/praesīmus, praesītis, praesint 2. praefuī, praefuistī, praefuit/praefuimus, praefuistis, praefuērunt 3. praefuissem, praefuissēs, praefuisset/ praefuissēmus, praefuissētis, praefuissent

II.

fāma differens, fāmae differentis, fāmae differentī, fāmam differentem, fāmā differentī/fāmae differentēs, fāmārum differentium, fāmīs differentibus, fāmās differentēs, fāmīs differentibus

III.

1. The commander says that the number of enemies will not be large. (The commander denies that the number of enemies will be large.) 2. Did you perceive that this sacrifice could have been done (was able to have been done) by the general? 3. Since this gift has been received, let our two nations be eager for a new peace. 4. We will not grieve, for with our remaining strength we can help those boys. 5. When these things were done (Because he had done these things), I perceived that my (female) friend could neither esteem nor praise her brother. 6. With great fear, the maidservants whom that (despicable) master wished to kill fled from the villa. 7. The laws of this republic differed greatly from the custom of your kings. 8. The (female) students said that they had learned nothing from the instruction of that teacher. 9. The report of a great fire having been heard (When they heard the report of a great fire), the frightened citizens rushed into the streets of the city. 10. That bold old man says that priests ought always to be in charge of sacrifices, but that the king ought to concentrate on human affairs.

Lecture 25

I.

1. missus, -a, -um sum, missus, -a, -um es, missus, -a, -um est/missī, -ae, -a sumus, missī, -ae, -a estis, missī, -ae, -a sunt 2. missus, -a, -um eram, missus, -a, -um erās, missus, -a, -um erat/missī, -ae, -a erāmus, missī, -ae, -a erātis, missī, -ae, -a erant 3. missus, -a, -um essem, missus, -a, -um essēs, missus, -a, -um esset/missī, -ae, -a essēmus, missī, -ae, -a essētis, missī, -ae, -a essent 4. mīserō, mīseris, mīserit/mīserimus, mīseritis, mīserint

II.

1. erāmus 2. eritis 3. fuī 4. fuerint 5. fuerat 6. erat 7. essem 8. fuissētis 9. erunt 10. poterō dīcere 11. poterat scrībere 12. potuerint currere

III.

1. The wretched maiden had written long letters which were never sent to my father. 2. Although the slave had been captured, the memory of (his) brief freedom was sweet. 3. The dinner, which was very pleasing to the guests (literally: the to the guests very pleasing dinner), was praised by all. 4. Our king says that the citizens are not eager for war; therefore he will receive the ambassadors sent by Caesar. 5. All the maidservants had been sent into the fields in order to extinguish the fire. 6. With the help of your mother this brave girl will not be captured. 7. Because Caesar was stabbed, many citizens said that liberty had been preserved. 8. Although you perceive that that (despicable) man has conspired against the republic, you will read his letter? 9. Tomorrow we will come to the senate house with your brother so that we may hear these great priests. 10. The ambassadors have been slain and your friends have fled by ship; the others have been captured.

Lecture 26

I.

1. hortor, hortāris, hortātur/hortāmur, hortāminī, hortantur 2. sequar, sequāris, sequātur/sequāmur, sequāminī, sequantur 3. patiēbar, patiēbāris, patiēbātur/patiēbāmur, patiēbāminī, patiēbantur 4. precāta sum, precāta es, precāta est/precātae sumus, precātae estis, precātae sunt 5. veritus essem, veritus essēs, veritus esset/veritī essēmus, veritī essētis, veritī essent

II.

1. hortābar 2. solitae sumus 3. patiēminī 4. secūta erat 5. precātus erit 6. dū hortārētur 7. fēminae hortātae essent 8. puerī partītī sint 9. Gavīsane es? 10. militēs ausī erant

III.

1. It is necessary that the chief priest care for the sacrifices, entreat for the nation, and worship the immortal gods. 2. You ought to fear this mighty general. 3. These bold women were not accustomed to follow wretched men. 4. Did you not have confidence in your friends? 5. The soldier whom you are looking for has suffered serious wounds. 6. We desire to share these new gifts with all the citizens of the city. 7. After the letter was written, the farmer dismissed the slave. 8. Let us esteem the wise students of this teacher who have followed his instruction in the Latin language. 9. Yesterday your sister was speaking with the king. What was she saying? 10. We will not follow a leader who wishes to be worshiped. 11. The old man begs that you dine with him today. 12. Our mother always used to urge us to love wisdom and to strive for strength (of character).

Lecture 27

I.

1. pugnārem, pugnārēs, pugnāret/pugnārēmus, pugnārētis, pugnārent 2. nātus, -a, -um eram, nātus, -a, -um erās, nātus, -a, -um erat/nātī, -ae, -a erāmus, nātī, -ae, -a erātis, nātī, -ae, -a erant 3. iusserō, iusseris, iusserit/iusserimus, iusseritis, iusserint 4. residēbō, residēbis, residēbit/residēbimus, residēbitis, residēbunt 5. resideam, resideās, resideat/resideāmus, resideātis, resideant

II.

1. present general condition: Sī laeta es, sum laetus. 2. past condition contrary to fact: Sī militēs pugnāvissent, vīcissent. 3. future less vivid condition: Sī pater meus veniat, gaudeam. 4. present condition contrary to fact: Sī amīcus tuus audīret, intellegeret. 5. future more vivid condition: Sī resēderint, patientur. 6. past general condition: Sī frāter vester resēdit, captus est.

III.

1. If you speak (literally: will have spoken) with the commander, our wretched city will not be destroyed. 2. If they had listened to the words of (their) wise mother, those boys would have worshiped the gods. 3. If we do not follow the laws of the gods, life is empty. 4. If my sister had come by a swift ship, then yesterday she would have been able to dine with the poet whom she adores. 5. This king is accustomed to being merciful; if he killed the conspirators, he has a plan—unless I'm mistaken. 6. If we see the sun(rise) tomorrow, we will make a sacrifice to the good goddess. 7. Inasmuch as the maidservants are working in the farmhouse, my (male) slave will stay behind after dinner in order to talk. 8. Do you believe that the conspirators will slay Caesar? 9. I will order your daughters to be sent to a place beyond the sea. If you love them, you will remain in this city. 10. If that violent man desired to preserve liberty, he would follow the advice of that bold old man, and restore the soldiers, whom we captured (the soldiers captured by us), to (their) wives.

Lecture 28

I.

1. metueram, metuerās, metuerat/metuerāmus, metuerātis, metuerant 2. ēciar, ēciēris, ēciētur/ēciēmur, ēciēmini, ēcientur 3. pugnem, pugnēs, pugnet/pugnēmus, pugnētis, pugnent 4. peragerer, peragerēris, peragerētur/peragerēmur, peragerēmini, peragerentur 5. dēcrēverim, dēcrēverīs, dēcrēverit/dēcrēverīmus, dēcrēverītis, dēcrēverint

II.

1. Whenever our legions fight, they conquer. 2. Although your legions are fighting, they cannot conquer that bold nation. 3. The republic can be saved provided that you destroy those (despicable) men who are conspiring against it. 4. Caesar says that men can hate him (i.e., Caesar) provided that they fear him (i.e., Caesar). 5. Caesar says that men can hate him (i.e., someone else) provided that they fear him (i.e., that other man who is not Caesar). 6. My mother says that her own sons can hate her provided they fear her. 7.

The free citizens say that Caesar can hate them provided he fears them. 8. We cannot live well as long as we dread destruction. 9. The senate decreed that those generals carry out the sacrifices. 10. We used to read many books in order that we might be praised. 11. Dismiss the boy so that he may not hear these wicked things. 12. The wise student follows the instruction of her teacher in order that she may live in the light of truth and the Latin language. 13. When he received the gifts (The gifts having been received), the boy was so happy that he gave his father many kisses. 14. The maidservant spoke with such great courage that the harsh maid did not dare to punish her. 15. Because the wise leader has been driven into exile, the citizens fear that all good men in their city will be seized.

Lecture 29

I.

1. Thou shalt burn! He/she/it shall burn! 2. They shall not bury! 3. Ye shall have! 4. Thou shalt not approve! He/she/it shall not approve! 5. They shall receive! 6. Thou shalt be! He/she/it shall be! 7. They shall be! 8. Thou shalt be burned! He/she/it shall be burned! 9. They shall not be buried! 10. Thou shalt not be approved! He/she/it shall not be approved! 11. They shall be received!

II.

1. If they burn the body, they will be punished. 2. Among us the dead are buried in the earth. 3. If you are well, I am well. 4. Our mother said that the deceased would lead a good life. 5. Since they had not put out their fires, I could see the soldiers coming from the large ship. 6. Although their leader had died, those brave citizens did not fear disaster. 7. You ought not to sanction the customs of that ancient people. 8. This affair is considered so serious by the master that he is seeking the death of my brother. 9. After the divorce had been accomplished, the woman wrote that her new life would be very pleasing (literally: the new life would be very pleasing to her). 10. If I had seen lights in the villa, I would not have believed this old man's lies. 11. Let us not seek a good or faithful man among conspirators. 12. The general

decreed that the poet could live—provided that he cease writing the truth about his wars.

Lecture 30

I.

1. Quid fēcisti (ēgisti)? 2. Quem amat? 3. Cui pecūniam dābo? 4. Cuius filia est illa puella? 5. Quis vīnum bibit? 6. Quī dux bellumaget? 7. Ā quō dominō crūdēlī interfectus est hic servus? 8. In quem agrum cucurrērunt? 9. Cui puellae fēlicī (laetae) flōrēs caedis? 10. Quam urbem adīmus? 11. Quot urbēs Rōmānī vīcērunt? 12. Quālēs hostēs Caesar vīcīt?

II.

1. Whither are these happy people rushing? What have they heard? Caesar himself isn't approaching the city, is he? 2. What were you doing that night, students? Were you drinking wine with your friends who love the Latin language or were you worshipping the immortal gods with the chief priest? 3. I cannot see the pretty boy about whom you're talking. Where is he? 4. How great was the fire? It was so great that all the maidservants fled and the entire villa was destroyed. 5. What foolish person will believe such great lies? Don't you think that your mother will perceive the truth? 6. Our commander asked whence these great ships had come. 7. Because his wife has been killed by the general, the frightened man will now ask his friends whom he ought to trust. 8. The king is so wicked that he is ordering his own daughter to be driven into exile. 9. On whose advice are you punishing the boy? Be merciful, O mistress! Let him stay with his mother! 10. Woe is you! If you seek the death of this good citizen, then to whom will you not seem cruel?

Lecture 31

I.

1. diēs magnus, diēī magnī, diēī magnō, diem magnum, diē magnō/diēs magnī, diērum magnōrum, diēbus magnīs, diēs magnōs, diēbus magnīs 2. genū malum, genūs malī, genū malō, genū malum, genū malō/genua mala,

genuum malōrum, genibus malīs, genua mala, genibus malīs 3. senātus iūstus, senātūs iūstī, senātuī iūstō, senātum iūstum, senātū iūstō/senātūs iūstī, senātuum iūstōrum, senātibus iūstīs, senātūs iūstōs, senātibus iūstīs

II.

1. ante diem ratiōnis 2. post aliam noctem libertātis 3. sub poenā mortis 4. in manibus senātūs 5. dē tuīs rēbus 6. Virginem ancilla in genibus precābātur. 7. Dē quō loquitur ille? 8. Poētā dē nostrō saeculō scelestō (nostrā dē aetāte scelestā) scribere dīcēbat senex.

III.

1. My daughter is asking how many soldiers died in that war. 2. Seek and you will find the truth about this matter. 3. That judge's decision wasn't just, was it? 4. Although you desire forgiveness, you will be punished very severely. 5. If the cruel judge should release our sister, we would rejoice. 6. If you had not sought revenge, (our) friends would have remained free. 7. When his son was found, the king was so happy that he released all the captured men. 8. Your father laid aside his anger so that the household might live in peace with their slaves. 9. This wicked judgment having been made, who will dare to approach my brother? 10. If they should leave him, the tenderhearted students fear that their teacher of the Latin language may (be going to) endure great grief for many days.

Lecture 32

I.

1. Puella puerō amanda est. 2. Urbs legiōnibus nostrīs oppugnanda erat. 3. Hae iniūriae cīvibus omnibus querendae sunt. 4. Illae arborēs pontificī caedendae erunt. 5. Māter mea deōs agricolae colendōs esse dīcit. 6. Putatne omnēs discipulīs dīligendōs esse magistrōs? 7. Num servus dominō suō pulsandus erat? 8. Nostra soror cāra iūdicī crudelī solvenda erit.

II.

1. Our slaves are running to extinguish the fire. 2. The general is approaching for the purpose of performing the sacrifice. 3. I have come with the other wise students to learn the Latin language. 4. Those things that this bold old man said were truly amazing to hear. 5. The leader will come with his legion to assist the wearied soldiers. 6. My wife gave attention to selling the animals. 7. If this is permissible to say, poets (of the sort) who write against the laws of this senate should not be punished, but protected, by the immortal gods. 8. Your friend always says that these injustices must not be endured by a free people. 9. Although she loved her father, mother, and brothers, the brave maiden departed that night, and left them. Indeed, this difficult thing had to be done by her. 10. That wicked woman is entreating the judge on behalf of her son. Do you think that he should dismiss the just penalty (... that the just penalty should be dismissed by him)? 11. Carthage must be destroyed! 12. Cato always said that Carthage had to be destroyed. 13. Inasmuch as the gift of forgiveness has been made, the commands of the leader should be followed by all the soldiers.

Lecture 33

I.

1. īmus 2. eāmus 3. adierant 4. inībāmus 5. exeunt omnēs 6. exeant 7. ībō 8. īte 9. adierit 10. ītisne?

II.

1. decem 2. vīgintī 3. trīgintā 4. centum 5. duodēquadrāgintā 6. novem 7. duodecim 8. septem 9. sexāgintā (et) quīnque 10. quattuor 11. sēdecim 12. ūndēcentum 13. octo 14. quīnquāgintā (et) trēs 15. quattuor mīlia

III.

1. Duās filiās ūnumque filium habēbat. 2. Quī discipulus hōrum trium id fēcīt? 3. Inī cum duōbus amicīs (meīs). 4. Cum duābus amicīs exībō. 5. Prīmā nave cras veniēmus. 6. Tertia es quae patrī meō hoc dīxit. 7. Quō

eunt illae duae puellae? 8. Quōs rūmōrēs hōrum sex senum dē illīs duōbus discipulīs audīvērunt trēs magistrī nostrī? 9. Lēgēs reī pūblicae decem virīs scribendae erant.

IV.

1. They go into an evil place. (There is a going into an evil place.) 2. We will prepare many forts in order to protect the people. 3. Only three men were guarding the captured soldiers. 4. Our wretched legions wandered many miles through harsh fields and ancient forests. 5. The leader reckoned that he would be able to capture those exhausted wretches with his hundred soldiers. 6. Let us lament the thousand injustices of this wicked commander! 7. The commander came with 6,000 faithful soldiers in order to destroy the Germans. 8. How many German women were in the water? Did y'all see three or four? It's difficult to say.

Lecture 34

I.

1. ferō, fers, fert/ferimus, fertis, ferunt 2. volō, vīs, vult/volumus, vultis, volunt 3. fiō, fīs, fit/fimus fitis fiunt 4. mālō, māvīs, māvult/mālumus, māvultis, mālunt

II.

1. nōlēbāmus 2. nōluērunt 3. māluerātis 4. fīēbat 5. factum est 6. ferēbant 7. fertur 8. ferēs 9. volent 10. māluerit 11. facta erunt 12. mālēmus

III.

1. velint 2. mālim 3. ferret 4. ferātur 5. nōllēmus 6. māluerit 7. factum esset 8. fiat 9. fierēs 10. nōlit

IV.

1. Nōlī arborēs pulchrās caedere, imperātor! 2. Nōlīte in villā currere, puerī et puellae! 3. Nōlīte vīnum in agrōs ferre, agricolae! 4. Māluitne māter eius in urbe habitāre? 5. Tam misericors erat pater ut filium indignum verberāre nōllet. 6. Sacrificiīs deīs potentibus oblātīs, trēs legiōnēs ad Germānōs delendōs missae sunt.

V.

1. A sound mind wants to understand the customs of many nations. 2. Let us bear our deceased brother's body, which we must burn, from the city. 3. If you do not want to make an unjust judgment about this matter, the king will find another judge. 4. On the day of reckoning, just people will be made happy but the wicked kings will suffer the wrath of God. 5. Inasmuch as the citizens wished to protect liberty, they had to expose many injustices (had to be exposed by them). 6. Indeed, if those seven conspirators prefer to gather under the light of the moon, then great fires will be prepared for the sake of exposing (these) wicked persons. 7. Don't depart, my wife! Let us attend to placating the gods. 8. Because the maidens were unwilling (With the maidens unwilling), wretched Caesar says that he prefers to kiss Catullus. 9. God willing, students will always want to learn the Latin language.

Lecture 35

I.

flūmen rapidius, flūminis rapidiōris, flūminī rapidiōrī, flūmen rapidius, flūmine rapidiōre*/flūmina rapidiōra*, flūminum rapidiōrum*, flūminibus rapidiōribus, flūmina rapidiōra*, flūminibus rapidiōribus

*Unlike most adjectives, comparative adjectives do not follow the *i*-stem rule (see App. §27, b).

II.

puella fortior, puellae fortiōris, puellae fortiōrī, puellam fortiōrem, puellā fortiōre/puellae fortiōrēs, puellārum fortiōrum, puellīs fortiōribus, puellās fortiōrēs, puellīs fortiōribus

III.

1. of the best meal 2. the worst days 3. swiftly 4. with my newest friend 5. equally 6. to/for the easiest work 7. healthiest body 8. of the longer nights 9. long (as an adverb) 10. wisest woman (acc.) 11. in a very/most holy place 12. to/for the more greedy king 13. definitely 14. brighter stars 15. to/for the most wretched poet 16. bitterly

IV.

1. You have the brightest (or very bright) eyes. 2. Indeed, now that these things have been heard, the conspirators' plans are clearer than light. 3. The general wrote that he loved the girl more than his own eyes. 4. The most holy spirit of the deceased poet must be worshiped by you. 5. Bound by love, my husband will perform those very (most) difficult labors for his son. 6. Can you come by a swifter ship? 7. Don't be greedy! You should always give the best gifts to your dearest friends. 8. That old man says that life among the dead (i.e., Manes) will be happier than his bitter life among us (the living), but don't believe him! 9. Let's prepare dinner quickly; the guests are approaching the villa! 10. All (our) citizens have very (most) bravely endured very (most) harsh punishments, but our very (most) unjust judges will certainly not be appeased. 11. As the Germans are fighting fiercely, we fear that they may not be destroyed (whether they may be destroyed) by Caesar's legions. 12. Your brother spoke so foolishly in the senate that he was thrown out into the street yesterday.

Lecture 36

I.

1. petam 2. voluerit 3. peterent 4. māvult 5. dēbuī vīvere 6. sēparābor 7. pervēneris 8. commendēmus 9. nōlint 10. petat 11. vīxerātis 12. vīxissētis 13. fertur 14. habērēmus 15. suāsa erit

II.

1. You did not esteem those men with whom you lived for a very short time, did you? 2. After the war the two soldiers were separated by the hand of fate. 3. Let us commend the spirit of our brother into the most lenient hands of (our) ancestral spirits. 4. During nighttime hours the father entreated the gods that the small girl might live through the very long night. 5. The priest asks what indeed the king wishes to do. Surely he does not command that these most sacred trees be cut down? 6. What is sweeter than love? An avaricious man prefers money. Others say that power is sweetest. 7. Go quickly! You should have helped (your) mother yesterday; a very grave punishment approaches! 8. Even the leader who holds the most supreme power among human beings is himself subject to the greater authority of fate. 9. The waters were rushing so swiftly that neither the soldiers nor the women were able to cross the river. 10. If you wish to dwell more happily with her, you must read this book (literally: this book must be read by you). 11. Now that the unjust judges have been driven out, let all free citizens attend to the preservation of the republic. 12. Many difficult things having been accomplished, we have come to the end of our first journey. We are able to gaze upon most beautiful stars. We're speaking Latin. Let's rejoice!

Appendix

This appendix represents an adaptation of pp. 424–465 of Arthur Tappan Walker's *Caesar's Gallic War with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary and Grammatical Appendix* (Chicago and New York: Scott Foresman and Company, 1907).

PRONUNCIATION

LENGTH OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
 - a. Before another vowel or before h; as in eō, nihil.
 - b. Before nd and nt; as in laudandus, laudant.
 - c. In words with more than one syllable before any final consonant other than s, as in laudem, laudat. (But compare laudās.)
2. A vowel is long:
 - a. Before nf, ns, nx, and nct, as in īnferō, cōnsul, iūnxī, iūnctum.
 - b. When it results from contraction, as in īsset, from iisset.
3. A vowel is usually long:
 - a. In one syllable words (monosyllables) not ending in b, d, l, m, or t, as in mē, hīc (but compare ab and ad where the vowels are short).

PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS

4. In classical Latin pronunciation, long vowels, whether they were accented or not, were supposed to receive twice the time given to the

pronunciation of short vowels. This rule matters more in reading poetry metrically than it does in reading prose.

a = a in tuba	ā = a in father
e = e in net	ē = e in they
i = i in pin	ī = i in machine
o = o in for (not as in hot)	ō = o in pony
u = oo in foot	ū = oo in food

y = French u or German ü; but this sound rarely occurs.

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

- Diphthongs are the sounds produced by two vowels when the first slides into the second so quickly that it seems as if both are pronounced simultaneously. A diphthong thus produces only one, not two, syllables. The following diphthongs are those that appear in classical Latin:

ae = ai in aisle

oe = oi in oil

au = ow in how

eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds eh'-oo.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds oo'-ee. This diphthong appears in cui, huic, cuius, and huius.

- When the consonant i (= j in older classical editions) appears between two vowels, as in maior, eius, Troia, and cuius, though i was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were maiior, eiuis, Troiaa, and cuiuis. The second i is the consonant, pronounced like y in yet. The first i is a vowel, which makes a

diphthong with the vowel that precedes it according to the rules indicated above in number 5.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are generally pronounced as they are in English, but the following points should be noted:

c and g are always hard, as in can and go

i (the consonant, which is sometimes printed j) = y in yet

n before c, g, q, and x = ng in sing

r should always be pronounced

s should always be pronounced as in this, never as in these

t as in tin, never as in nation

v = w

x = ks

z = dz

ch, ph, th = c, p, t

bs, bt = ps, pt

qu = qu in quart

ngu = ngu in anguish

su = sw as in suādeō.

- a. When consonants are doubled, as in *mittō* and *annus*, both consonants should be pronounced, as they are in *out-take* and *pen-knife*. We pronounce only one consonant in *kitty* and *penny*.
7. We generally consider *i* a consonant when it occurs between vowels and when it appears at the beginning of a word in front of another vowel. In compounds of *iaciō* (throw), we find the form *iciō*. We believe that in these words the consonant *i* was pronounced, even though it was not written, before vowel *i*. If we adopt this rule, *dēiciō* is pronounced as if it were spelled *dēiiciō* and *abiciō* as if it were spelled *abiiciō*.

SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.
 - a. When a single consonant appears between two vowels, it is pronounced with the vowel that follows it, as in *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.
 - a. Some consonants can be pronounced indefinitely. They “flow” and are thus called “liquids.” Other consonants fall silent immediately after they are pronounced. Such consonants are called “mutes.” When liquids (*l* or *r*) follow mutes (*b*, *c*, *d*, *g*, *p*, *t*, *ch*, *ph*, or *th*), the resulting combination is often pronounced like a single consonant together with the following vowel, as in *pa-tris* and *a-grī*.
 - b. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant or before the “mute-liquid” combination described above (§8.b), as we find in *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, and *magis-trī*.

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:
 - a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as in both syllables of *lau-dās* and the first syllable of *ēius* (§5.a).

- b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants (except the combination of a mute and a liquid [see §8.c]) or by one of the double consonants *x* (= *ks*) and *z* (= *dz*). The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by its position: *est* is pronounced *est*, not *ēst*. The syllable, not the vowel, becomes long. The time taken to pronounce a consonant at the end of a syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (§8.c) lengthens that syllable. You will perceive this if you pronounce each of the consonants that are supposed to be pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (see §6.a), *anus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tōs*, and *nos-ter*.

ACCENT

10. Words with two syllables are accented on the first syllable, as in *Caesar*.
11. Words with more than two syllables are accented on the penult (second-to-last syllable), if that syllable is long, as in *dīvi'sa* and *appel'lō*. If the penult is short, the antepenult (i.e., the syllable third from the end) receives the accent, as in *per'tinent*.
12. When an enclitic (a word that attaches to the end of another word) is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic, as in *Gallia'que*.

INFLECTION

NOUNS

THE GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. Latin nouns are classified as masculine, feminine, or neuter. For most nouns, gender is grammatical rather than biological. Often, the gender of nouns can be determined from the nominative ending. In other instances, it must be learned for individual words. The following rules should prove helpful.

- a. The names of male beings (human, animal, divine), as well as rivers, winds, and months, are masculine.
- a. The names of female beings (human, animal, divine), as well as countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and most abstract qualities, are feminine.
- b. Indeclinable nouns and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns. They are distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I. First	ā	-ae
II. Second	o	-ī
III. Third	consonant or i	-is
IV. Fourth	u	-ūs
V. Fifth	ē	-ēī or -eī

- a. In a linguistically precise world, we would form cases by adding case endings to the stem. But the stems of Latin nouns combine with the vowels of case endings in odd ways. It is thus much more convenient (because this method works in practice) to say that the cases are formed by adding case endings to the base. We find the base of a noun by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a; (and the base ends in whatever remains after removing the genitive singular; see §14.a). The gender is usually feminine.

puella, f., girl

	SINGULAR		ENDINGS
Nominative	puella	the girl ("verbs" as subject)	-a
Genitive	puellae	of the girl, the girl's	-ae
Dative	puellae	to or for the girl	-ae
Accusative	puellam	the girl (as object)	-am
Ablative	puellā	by, from, in, or with the girl	-ā

	PLURAL		ENDINGS
Nominative	puellae	the girls ("verb" as subjects)	-ae
Genitive	puellārum	of the girls, the girls'	-ārum
Dative	puellīs	to or for the girls	-īs
Accusative	puellās	the girls (as objects)	-ās
Ablative	puellīs	by, from, in, or with the girls	-īs

- Exceptions in gender are generally revealed by the meanings of words (see §13), as in *Belgae*, m., the Belgae (because groups of people are considered masculine); *Matrona*, m., the (river) Marne (because rivers are masculine). Others must be learned, as in *agricola*, m., farmer.
- The "locative" singular is a way to indicate "place where," i.e., "location." It ends in -ae, such as *Romae*, at Rome.
- The "vocative" case is identical with the nominative singular and plural: *Puella!* O girl! and *Puellae!* O girls!

SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, or -ir; the nominative neuter in -um; and the base will be found by removing the genitive singular ending (see §14.a).

	servus, m., slave Base serv-	puer, m., boy Base puer-	ager, m., field Base agr-	bellum, n., war Base bell-
SINGULAR				
Nom.	servus	puer	ager	bellum
Gen.	servī	puerī	agrī	bellī
Dat.	servō	puerō	agrō	bellō
Acc.	servum	puerum	agrum	bellum
Abl.	servō	puerō	agrō	bellō
PLURAL				
Nom.	servī	puerī	agrī	bella
Gen.	servōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	bellīs
Acc.	servōs	puerōs	agrōs	bella
Abl.	servīs	puerīs	agrīs	bellīs

- a. Exceptions in gender are revealed by the meanings of the words (see §13). Fraxinus, ash tree, is feminine; vulgus, crowd, is usually neuter. Locus, m., place, has the plural loca, n., places.
- b. The “locative” singular is a way to indicate “place where” or “location.” It ends in -ī, such as Agedincī, at Agedincum.
- c. In classical Latin, nouns ending in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular with -ī, instead of with -ii, and nouns ending in -ium form the genitive with -ī. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; e.g., consi’lī (from consilium) of advice. In later Latin, genitives in -ii became increasingly common, and many modern editions prefer -ii.

- d. The “vocative” case is identical with the nominative except in the nominative singular for second-declension nouns that end in -us or -ius. Nominative -us changes to vocative -e and -ius to vocative -ī; e.g., Serve! O slave! and Molinārī! O Molinarius!

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third-declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. The nominative case ending for masculines and feminines is an -s or no ending at all; for neuters, none. Because the nominative is so varied, it is convenient to think of it as a “blank.” The more useful base may be found by removing the genitive ending (see §14.a). The vocative case is identical with the nominative.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

	lux, f., light Base luc-		mīles, m., soldier Base mīlit-		corpus, n., body Base corpor-	
	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Nom.	lux	lucēs	mīles	mīlitēs	corpus	corpora
Gen.	lucis	lucum	mīlitis	mīlitum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	lucī	lucibus	mīlitī	mīlitibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	lucem	lucēs	mīlitem	mīlitēs	corpus	corpora
Abl.	luce	lucibus	mīlite	mīlitibus	corpore	corporibus

B. I-STEMS

18. Third-declension nouns are *i*-stems, if (1) they are masculine and feminine nouns ending in -is or -ēs and they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative or if (2) they are neuter nouns that end in -e, -al, or -ar.
19. Because this declension became confused with the regular third declension, the *i* does not appear consistently, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have accusative -em, ablative, -e, accusative plurals either in -ēs or -īs. (Most,

but not all, texts regularize the accusative plural as -ēs; nevertheless, one occasionally encounters the alternative accusative plural that we offer below in our chart of *hostis*.) Neuters have ablative -ī.

	hostis, m., enemy (Stem <i>hosti-</i>) Base <i>host-</i>	animal, n., animal (Stem <i>animāli-</i>) Base <i>animāl-</i>
SINGULAR		
Nom.	<i>hostis</i>	<i>animal</i>
Gen.	<i>hostis</i>	<i>animālis</i>
Dat.	<i>hostī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
Acc.	<i>hostem</i>	<i>animal</i>
Abl.	<i>hoste</i>	<i>animālī</i>
PLURAL		
Nom.	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>animālia</i>
Gen.	<i>hostium</i>	<i>animālium</i>
Dat.	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>
Acc.	<i>hostēs</i> or <i>hostīs</i>	<i>animālia</i>
Abl.	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>

- a. Feminine *i*-stem nouns of the third declension decline according to the pattern of *hostis*, *hostis*, m., enemy.

C. IRREGULAR NOUNS

20. Some common nouns of the third declension are irregular:

	senex, m., old man Base <i>sen-</i>	vīs, f., force Base <i>v-</i>	bōs, m., f., cow Base <i>bov-</i>	Iuppiter, m., Jupiter Base <i>lov-</i>
SINGULAR				
Nom.	<i>senex</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
Gen.	<i>senis</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>bovis</i>	<i>lovis</i>
Dat.	<i>senī</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>bovī</i>	<i>lovī</i>
Acc.	<i>senem</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>bovem</i>	<i>lovem</i>
Abl.	<i>sene</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>bove</i>	<i>love</i>

PLURAL			
Nom.	senēs	vīrēs	bovēs
Gen.	senum	vīrium	bovum or boum
Dat.	senibus	vīribus	bovibus or būbus
Acc.	senēs	vīrēs	bovēs
Abl.	senibus	vīribus	bovibus or būbus

FOURTH DECLENSION

21. The stem of fourth-declension nouns ends in -u; the nominative masculine ends in -us, the nominative neuter in -ū. The base may be found by removing the genitive singular ending (see §14.a).

	manus, f., hand Base man-		cornū, n., horn Base corn-	
	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Nom.	manus	manūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	manūs	manuum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	manuī	manibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	manum	manūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	manū	manibus	cornū	cornibus

- Masculine nouns of the fourth declension decline like manus, f., hand.
- The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ū.
- The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.
- The vocative is identical to the nominative.

- e. Domus, f., house, base dom-, has some second-declension forms. The forms in general use are:

	SING.	PLURAL
Nom.	domus	domūs
Gen.	domūs	domuum
Dat.	domuī or domō	domibus
Acc.	domum	domōs
Abl.	domō or domū	domibus
Locative	domī (at home)	domibus (at or in their homes)

FIFTH DECLENSION

22. Fifth-declension nouns have a stem that ends in -ē and a nominative in -ēs. They are usually feminine.

	rēs, f., thing Base r-		diēs, m., day Base di-	
	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Nom.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
Gen.	reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
Dat.	reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

- In the singular, diēs is either masculine or feminine (the feminine is usually used in the sense of an appointed day or for a long space of time); in the plural, diēs is masculine. Its compounds are also masculine.
- The ending of the genitive and dative singular of fifth-declension nouns is -ēī after a vowel, -eī after a consonant. Sometimes the ending -ē is used instead of either.

- c. The vocative is identical to the nominative.

ADJECTIVES

22. FIRST- AND SECOND-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

magnus, magna, magnum, large

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

liber, libera, liberum, free

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
Gen.	liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
Dat.	liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Acc.	liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
Abl.	liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
Gen.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
Dat.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Abl.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

- a. The vocative ending is -e for second-declension masculine singular adjectives ending in -us; e.g., Magne! O great one! (from magnus). For second-declension masculine singular adjectives ending in -ius, the vocative ending is -ī; e.g., Alī! O other one! (from alius). Elsewhere, the vocative is identical with the nominative. Compare second-declension nouns in §16.d.

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -īus.

24. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have a genitive singular that ends in -īus (the genitive of alter is usually -ius) and a dative singular that ends in -ī in all genders. These nine adjectives are alius, another; sōlus, only; tōtus, whole; ūllus, any; nūllus, no; ūnus, one; alter, the other; uter, which (of two); and neuter, neither. In the plural, the case endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as they are for magnus. Note also the ending -ud in the neuter of alius.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	aliīus	aliīus	aliīus	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	aliū	aliā	aliud	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	tōtīus	tōtīus	tōtīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

SINGULAR		
Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
alterus	altera	alterum
alterius	alterius	alterius
alterī	alterī	alterī
alterum	alteram	alterum
alterō	alterā	alterō

THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

25. Adjectives of the third declension include both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Third-declension adjectives with three endings have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender. Third-declension adjectives with two endings have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine and another for the neuter. Third-declension adjectives with one ending have the same form in the nominative singular for all three genders. Except comparatives (which have short -e), all third-declension adjectives with two or three endings always have -ī in the ablative singular.
26. Three endings.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (or acrīs)	ācrēs (or acrīs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

27. Two endings.

- a. All third-declension adjectives of two endings follow this pattern (except comparatives, for which see next, i.e., §27.b.).

fortis, forte brave

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs (or fortīs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

- b. The comparative degree of the adjective (see §30) does not follow the regular third-declension adjective paradigm. Note especially the ablative in -e (not -ī), the genitive plural in -um (not -ium), and the neuter nominative and accusative plurals in -a (not -ia).

fortior, fortius, braver

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

28. One ending.

audāx, gen. audācis, bold

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audāx	audācēs (or audācīs)	audācia
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus

29. Present active participle.

amans, loving

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	amans	amans	amantēs	amantia
Gen.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
Acc.	amantem	amans	amantēs (or amantīs)	amantia
Abl.	amante or -ī	amante or -ī	amantibus	amantibus

- a. Participles usually have an ablative singular that ends in -ī when they are used as adjectives and in -e when they are used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

30. The regular comparative endings are the third-declension adjective endings -ior (m. & f.), -ius (n.). (See above, §27.b, for the declension of the comparative.) The superlative, -issimus, -a, -um, uses first- and second-declension adjective endings. They are added to the base of the positive form of the adjective (which is found by removing the case ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, -a, -um, high; altior,

-ius, higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.

31. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative of the positive. Example: ācer, sharp (base, ācr-), ācrior, ācerrimus.
32. Most adjectives in -ilis form the comparative and superlative regularly. Six adjectives, however, although they form the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the base of the positive. These six are facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender. Example: facilis, faciliior, facillimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

33. bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best

malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst

magnus, maior, maximus, big, bigger, biggest

parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least

multus, plūs, plūrimus, much, more, most

dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, favorable (because good omens appeared on the right)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBS

34. When an adjective ends in a -us that is preceded by a vowel, it generally forms the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs magis, more, and maximē, most. Many other adjectives employ this method, as well. Example: idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maximē idōneus, most suitable.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

35. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.
- a. The positive form of the adverb is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base, such as *lātus*, wide, *lātē*, widely. Adjectives of the third declension add *-ter* or *-iter* to the base, except third-declension adjectives whose base ends in *nt*, which instead add only *-er*; some examples include: *audāx*, *audācis*, bold, *audacter*, boldly; *fortis*, brave, *fortiter*, bravely; *prūdēns*, *prūdentis*, prudent, *prūdentē*, prudently. The neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may also be used adverbially, such as *multum*, much; *facile*, easily.
 - a. The comparative form of the adverb is identical with accusative singular neuter of the comparative form of the adjective; such as *lātius*, more widely; *audācius*, more boldly; *fortius*, more bravely; *prūdentius*, more prudently; *plūs*, more; *facilius*, more easily.
 - b. The superlative form of the adverb is formed by adding *-e* to the base of the superlative form of the adjective or, less often, its accusative singular neuter, such as *lātissimē*, most widely; *audācissimē*, most boldly; *fortissimē*, most bravely; *prūdentissimē*, most prudently; *plūrimum*, most; *facillime*, most easily.

ROMAN NUMERALS

36. Numeral adjectives include cardinals, which answer the question how many (one, two, three, etc.) and ordinals, which answer the question in what order (first, second, third).

Roman Numerals	Cardinal Numbers	Ordinal Numbers
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -a	secundus, -a, -um or alter, -a, -um
III.	trēs, tria	tertius, -a, um
IV.	quattuor	quārtus, -a, um
V.	quīnque	quīntus, -a, um
VI.	sex	sextus, -a, um
VII.	septem	septimus, -a, um
VIII.	octo	octāvus, -a, um
IX.	novem	nōnus, -a, um
X.	decem	decimus, -a, um
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus, -a, um
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus, -a, um
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus tertia decima tertium decimum
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus, -a -a, -um -um
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus, -a -a, -um -um
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus, -a -a, -um -um
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus, -a -a, -um -um
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvīcēsīmus, -a, um
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus, -a, um
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsīmus, -a, um

XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus, -a -a, -um -um
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus, -a, um
XXIX	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus, -a, um
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus, -a, um
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus, -a, um
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, um
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus, -a, um
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus, -a, um
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus, -a, um
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus, -a, um
C.	centum	centēsīmus, -a, um
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus, -a -a, -um -um
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus, -a, um
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus, -a, um
CCCC.	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus, -a, um
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus, -a, um
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsīmus, -a, um
DCC.	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus, -a, um
DCCC.	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus, -a, um
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus, -a, um
M.	mīlle	mīllēsīmus, -a, um
MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus, -a, um

a. The ending *-ēnsimus* is often used for *-ēsimus*.

37. The cardinal numbers, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable; cardinals from *ducentī* to *nōnāgentī* are declined like the plural of *magnus* (§23); *mīlle*, when used as an adjective, is indeclinable, but when used as a substantive, it is declined like the plural of *animal* (§19) and generally spelled *mīlia*. Ordinal numbers are declined like *magnus* (§23).

38. For the declension of *ūnus*, see §24. Its plural usually means only or alone. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

	duo, two			trēs, three	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

39. The numbers that would fall between the numbers provided in the table in §36 may be produced as follows: In a combination of tens and units, the units may precede the tens, followed by *et*, as in *trēs et quadrāgintā*, three and forty = forty-three; or the tens may precede the units but without an *et*, as in *quadrāgintā trēs*, forty-three. In other combinations of two numbers, the higher number precedes the lower number, with or without *et*, as in *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, two hundred (and) twenty. In combinations of three or more numbers, the order is as in English without *et*, as in *duo mīlia sescentī vīgintī sex*, two thousand six hundred twenty six.

PRONOUNS

40. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	First person: ego, I; nōs, we		Second person: tū, you (thou); vōs, you (y'all, you guys, ye)	
	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum or nostrī	tuī	vestrum or vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

- There is no personal pronoun for the third person. A demonstrative pronoun generally serves in its place, often is, he; ea, she; id, it (§45), although other demonstrative pronouns may be used, as well.
- The preposition cum is enclitic with personal pronouns (i.e., it attaches to the personal pronoun), as in vōbīscum, with y'all.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- There is no nominative form of reflexive pronouns because they cannot be the subjects of finite verbs (infinitives have accusative subjects), and they cannot agree with the subject of finite verbs. For the first and second persons, the personal pronouns are also used as reflexives. For the third person, however, there is a special pronoun.

	First person, meī, of myself; nostrum, of ourselves		Second person, tuī, of yourself; vestrum, of yourselves		Third person, suī, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves	
	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Gen.	meī	nostrum or nostrī	tuī	vestrum or vestrī	suī	suī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē	sē
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē	sē

- a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns (i.e., it attaches to the reflexive pronoun), as in *sēcum*, with himself.

42. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st person	meus, -a, -um, my	noster, -tra, -trum, our
2nd person	tuus, -a, -um, your	vester, -tra, -trum, your
3rd person	eius (gen. sing. of is), his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)	eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. sing. of is), their (when not referring to the subject)
3rd person reflexive	suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)	suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

43. *hīc*, *haec*, *hoc* (near the speaker), this, these.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>haec</i>
Gen.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Acc.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Abl.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

44. ille, illa, illud (something more remote), that, those.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

45. is, ea, id (unemphatic) this, that, he, she, it; plural: these, those, they

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī (or īī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (or īīs)	eīs (or īīs)	eīs (or īīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (or īīs)	eīs (or īīs)	eīs (or īīs)

46. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, who, which, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

- a. Quicumque, whoever, is a generalizing relative. The quī of quicumque is declined regularly (i.e., decline quī and add cumque).
- b. The preposition cum is usually enclitic with (i.e., it attaches to) the relative pronoun, as in quibuscum, with whom.

47. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The interrogative adjective quī, quae, quod, what, is declined like the relative pronoun (§46). The interrogative pronoun quis, quid, who, what, is used in the singular.

quis, who? what?

SINGULAR		
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

- a. The enclitic -nam is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; quisnam, who (in the world)?
- b. Cum is usually enclitic with (i.e., it attaches to) the interrogative pronoun, as in quōcum, with whom?

48. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

The indefinite pronouns are quis, quī and compounds formed with quis, quī as their base. Quis and quī in this sēnsē are generally declined like the interrogatives.

PRONOUN	ADJECTIVE
quis, quid, any one	quī, quae, quod, any
aliquis, aliquid, some one	aliquī, aliquae, aliquod, some
quispiam, quidpiam, some one	quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, some
quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet any one (you like)	quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs or quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet any you like
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain one	quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain
quisque, quidque, each	quisque, quaeque, quodque, each

VERBS

49. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs. They are distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, which can be seen most clearly in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDING
I.	ā	-āre
II.	ē	-ēre
III. & III.-io	ē (ī, ū)	-ēre
IV.	ī	-īre

50. All verb forms can be produced on the basis on one of three stems, which we derive from a verb's "principal parts" (see §51): the present stem (which we derive from the first and second principal parts), the perfect stem (from the third principal part), and the supine stem (from the fourth principal part). In regular verbs, the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs, they are formed on distinct roots.
- a. Verb forms based on the present stem (derived from the first and second principal parts) include in both the active and passive: the

present, imperfect, and future indicative; the present and imperfect subjunctive; the imperative; and the present infinitive. Additional verb forms include in the active only: the present participle and gerund; and in the passive only: the gerundive.

- b. Verb forms based on the perfect stem (found in the third principal part) include in the active voice only: the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; and the perfect infinitive.
 - c. Verb forms based on the supine stem (found in the fourth principal part) include in both the active and passive: the future infinitive; in the active only: the future participle and supine; and in the passive only: the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; the perfect infinitive; and the perfect participle.
51. The principal parts of a verb are those forms commonly listed by grammars and dictionaries to reveal a verb's conjugation, as well as its various stems. These parts are, in the active: (1) the first-person singular present indicative (as the first principal part), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first-person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine or perfect passive stem).

For example, the principal parts of *amō* are:

amō, amāre (present stem, *amā-*).

amāvī (perfect stem, *amāv-*).

amātum (supine stem, *amāt-*).

Not all verbs have supines. Nor do all verbs have perfect passive participles. Rather than the supine, some textbooks supply the perfect passive participle as a fourth principal part; for example, *amātus* rather than *amātum*. In such instances, one finds the supine stem by removing

an us rather than an um. At all events, because there is no one form that can be supplied for all verbs, the supine is commonly used for the sake of convenience. And if we translate the fourth principal part as a perfect passive participle (with which it is identical in form), it is because it is more useful to know how to translate a perfect passive participle. Supines occur relatively infrequently, whereas perfect passive participles are ubiquitous.

52. CONJUGATION OF SUM (irregular verb)

Principal parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be

- a. Because there is no supine, we use the future active participle as the fourth principal part for forms based on the supine stem.

N.B.: Translations of the subjunctive are provided by way of example, and are not exhaustive.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
sum I am	sumus	sim I may be, let me be, I am	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
Imperfect		Imperfect	
eram I was	erāmus	essem (or forem) I might be, I was	essēmus (or forēmus)
erās	erātis	essētis (or forētis)	essētis (or forētis)
erat	erant	esset (or foret)	essent (or forent)

Future			
erō I will be	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		
Perfect		Perfect	
fuī I have been, I was	fuīmus	fuerim I may have been, I have been, I was	fuerīmus
fuistī	fuistis	fuerīs	fuerītis
fuit	fuerunt (or fuēre)	fuerit	fuerint
Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
fueram I had been	fuerāmus	fuissem I might have been, I had been	fuissēmus
fuerās	fuerātis	fuissēs	fuissētis
fuerat	fuerant	fuisset	fuissent
Future Perfect			
fuerō I will have been	fuerimus		
fueris	fueritis		
fuerit	fuerint		

IMPERATIVE		PARTICIPLE
Present		Fut. futūrus, -a, -um going to be
2nd pers. es be!	este be!	INFINITIVE
Present		Pres. esse to be
2nd pers. estō thou shalt be!	estōte ye shall be!	Perf. fuisse to have been
3rd pers. estō he, she, or it shall be!	sunto they shall be!	Fut. futūrus, -a, -um esse or fore to be going to be, to be about to be

53. FIRST CONJUGATION

Active principal parts: amō, amāre, amāvi, amātum, love

Passive principal parts: amor, amārī, amātus sum, be loved

N.B.: Translations of the subjunctive are provided by way of example and are not exhaustive.

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		Present	
Sing.	amō I love, I am loving, I do love	amem I may love, let me love, I love, etc.	amor I am loved, I am being loved	amer I may be loved, let me be loved, I am loved, etc.
	amās	amēs	amāris or -re	amēris or -re
	amat	amet	amātur	amētur

Plural	amāmus	amēmus	amāmur	amēmur
	amātis	amētis	amāminī	amēminī
	amant	ament	amantur	amentur
	Imperfect		Imperfect	
Sing.	amābam I loved, I was loving, I used to love	amārem I might love, I loved, etc.	amābar I was loved, I was being loved, I used to be loved	amārer I might be loved, I was loved, etc.
	amābās	amārēs	amābāris or -re	amārēris or -re
	amābat	amāret	amābātur	amārētur
Plural	amābāmus	amārēmus	amābāmur	amārēmur
	amābātis	amārētis	amābāminī	amārēminī
	amābant	amārent	amābantur	amārentur
	Future		Future	
Sing.	amābō I will love		amābor I will be loved	
	amābis		amāberis or -re	
	amābit		amābitur	
Plural	amābimus		amābimur	
	amābitis		amābiminī	
	amābunt		amābuntur	
	Perfect		Perfect	
Sing.	amāvī I have loved, I loved	amāverim I may have loved, I have loved, I loved	amātus, -a, -um sum I have been loved, I was loved	amātus, -a, -um sī I may have been loved, I have been loved, I was loved
	amāvistī	amāverīs	amātus, -a, -um es	amātus, -a, -um sīs
	amāvit	amāverit	amātus, -a, -um est	amātus, -a, -um sit

Plural	amāvimus	amāverīmus	amātī, -ae, -a sumus	amātī, -ae, -a sīmus
	amāvistis	amāverītis	amātī, -ae, -a estis	amātī, -ae, -a sītis
	amāverunt or -ēre	amāverint	amātī, -ae, -a sunt	amātī, -ae, -a sint
Pluperfect		Pluperfect		
Sing.	amāveram I had loved	amāvissem I might have loved, I had loved	amātus, -a, -um eram I had been loved	amātus, -a, -um essem I might have been loved, I had been loved
	amāverās	amāvissēs	amātus, -a, -um erās	amātus, -a, -um essētis
	amāverat	amāvisset	amātus, -a, -um erat	amātus, -a, -um esset
Plural	amāverāmus	amāvissēmus	amātī, -ae, -a erāmus	amātī, -ae, -a essēmus
	amāverātis	amāvissētis	amātī, -ae, -a erātis	amātī, -ae, -a essētis
	amāverant	amāvissent	amātī, -ae, -a erant	amātī, -ae, -a essent
Future Perfect		Future Perfect		
Sing.	amāverō I will have loved		amātus, -a, -um erō I will have been loved	
	amāveris		amātus, -a, -um eris	
	amāverit		amātus, -a, -um erit	
Plural	amāverimus		amātī, -ae, -a erimus	
	amāveritis		amātī, -ae, -a eritis	
	amāverint		amātī, -ae, -a erunt	

IMPERATIVE			
ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
2nd pers. amā love!	amāte love!	amāre be loved!	amāminī be loved!
Future		Future	
2nd pers. amātō thou shalt love!	amātōte ye shall love!	amātor thou shalt be loved!	
3rd pers. amātō he, she, or it shall love!	amantō they shall love!	amātor he, she, or it shall be loved!	amantor they shall be loved!

INFINITIVE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	amāre to love	amārī to be loved
Perfect	amāvisse to have loved	amātus, -a, um esse to have been loved
Future	amātūrus, -a, um esse to be going to love	amātum īrī to be going to be loved

PARTICIPLE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	amāns loving	—
Perfect	—	amātus, -a, -um loved, having been loved
Future	amātūrus, -a, -um going to love, about to love	amāndus, -a, -um, necessary to be loved, must be loved

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Accusative	amātum (for the purpose of) loving, in order to love, etc.
Ablative	amātū in loving, by the loving, to love, etc.

GERUND (Active Voice)

Genitive	amandī of loving
Dative	amandō to or for loving
Accusative	amandum loving
Ablative	amandō by, with, or from loving

54. SECOND CONJUGATION

Active principal parts: videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see

Passive principal parts: videor, vidērī, vīsus sum, be seen, seem

N.B.: For sample translations of each tense, infinitives, participles, etc., see amō (§53).

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		Present	
Sing.	videō	videam	videor	videar
	vidēs	videās	vidēris or -re	videāris or -re
	videt	videat	vidētur	videātur
Plural	vidēmus	videāmus	vidēmur	videāmur
	vidētis	videātis	vidēminī	videāminī
	vident	videant	videntur	videantur
	Imperfect		Imperfect	
Sing.	vidēbam	vidērem	vidēbar	vidērer
	vidēbās	vidērēs	vidēbāris or -re	vidērēris or -re
	vidēbat	vidēret	vidēbātur	vidērētur
Plural	vidēbāmus	vidērēmus	vidēbāmur	vidērēmur
	vidēbātis	vidērētis	vidēbāminī	vidērēminī
	vidēbant	vidērent	vidēbantur	vidērentur
	Future		Future	
Sing.	vidēbō		vidēbor	
	vidēbis		vidēberis or -re	
	vidēbit		vidēbitur	
Plural	vidēbimus		vidēbimur	
	vidēbitis		vidēbiminī	
	vidēbunt		vidēbuntur	
	Perfect		Perfect	
Sing.	vīdī	vīderim	vīsus sum	vīsus sīm
	vīdistī	vīderīs	vīsus es	vīsus sīs
	vīdit	vīderit	vīsus est	vīsus sit

Plural	vīdimus	vīderīmus	vīsī sumus	vīsī sīmus
	vīdistis	vīderītis	vīsī estis	vīsī sītis
	vīdērunt or -ēre	vīderint	vīsī sunt	vīsī sint
	Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
Sing.	vīderam	vīdissem	vīsus eram	vīsus essem
	vīderās	vīdissēs	vīsus erās	vīsus essētis
	vīderat	vīdisset	vīsus erat	vīsus esset
Plural	vīderāmus	vīdissēmus	vīsī erāmus	vīsī essēmus
	vīderātis	vīdissētis	vīsī erātis	vīsī essētis
	vīderant	vīdissent	vīsī erant	vīsī essent
	Future Perfect		Future Perfect	
Sing.	vīderō		vīsus erō	
	vīderis		vīsus eris	
	vīderit		vīsus erit	
Plural	vīderimus		vīsī erimus	
	vīderitis		vīsī eritis	
	vīderint		vīsī erunt	

IMPERATIVE			
ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
2nd pers. vidē	vidēte	vidēre	vidēminī
Future		Future	
2nd pers. vidētō	vidētōte	vidētor	
3rd pers. vidētō	videntō	vidētor	videntor

INFINITIVE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	vidēre	vidērī

Perfect	vīdisse	vīsus esse
Future	vīsūrus esse	vīsum īrī

PARTICIPLE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	vidēns	—
Perfect	—	vīsus, -a, um
Future	vīsūrus, -a, um	vidēndus, -a, um

SUPINE (Active Voice)	
Accusative	vīsum
Ablative	vīsū

GERUND (Active Voice)	
Genitive	videndī
Dative	videndō
Accusative	videndum
Ablative	videndō

55. THIRD CONJUGATION

Active principal parts: pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, put, place

Passive principal parts: pōnor, pōnī, positus sum, be put, be placed

N.B.: For sample translations of each tense, infinitives, participles, etc., see amō (§53).

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		Present	

Sing.	pōnō	pōnam	pōnor	pōnar
	pōnis	pōnās	pōneris or -re	pōnāris or -re
	pōnit	pōnat	pōnitur	pōnātur
Plural	pōnimus	pōnāmus	pōnimur	pōnāmur
	pōnitīs	pōnātīs	pōnīmīnī	pōnāīmīnī
	pōnunt	pōnant	pōnuntur	pōnantur
		Imperfect		Imperfect
Sing.	pōnēbam	pōnerem	pōnēbar	pōnerer
	pōnēbās	pōnerēs	pōnēbāris or -re	pōnerēris or -re
	pōnēbat	pōneret	pōnēbātur	pōnerētur
Plural	pōnēbāmus	pōnerēmus	pōnēbāmur	pōnerēmur
	pōnēbātīs	pōnerētīs	pōnēbāīmīnī	pōnerēīmīnī
	pōnēbant	pōnerent	pōnēbantur	pōnerentur
		Future		Future
Sing.	pōnam		pōnar	
	pōnēs		pōnēris or -re	
	pōnet		pōnētur	
Plural	pōnēmus		pōnēmur	
	pōnētīs		pōnīmīnī	
	pōnent		pōnentur	
		Perfect		Perfect
Sing.	posuī	posuerim	positus sum	positus sīm
	posuistī	posuerīs	positus es	positus sīs
	posuit	posuerit	positus est	positus sit
Plural	posuimus	posuerīmus	positī sumus	positī sīmus
	posuistīs	posuerītīs	positī estis	positī sītīs
	posuērunt or -ēre	posuerint	positī sunt	positī sint
		Pluperfect		Pluperfect
Sing.	posueram	posuissēm	positus eram	positus essem
	posuerās	posuissēs	positus erās	positus essētīs
	posuerat	posuisset	positus erat	positus esset

Plural	posuerāmus	posuissēmus	positī erāmus	positī essēmus
	posuerātis	posuissētis	positī erātis	positī essētis
	posuerant	posuissent	positī erant	positī essent
	Future Perfect		Future Perfect	
Sing.	posuerō		positus erō	
	posueris		positus eris	
	posuerit		positus erit	
Plural	posuerimus		positī erimus	
	posueritis		positī eritis	
	posuerint		positī erunt	

IMPERATIVE			
ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
pōne	pōnite	pōnere	pōniminī
Future		Future	
2nd pers. pōnitō	pōnitōte	pōnitor	
3rd pers. pōnitō	pōnuntō	pōnitor	pōnuntor

INFINITIVE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	pōnere	pōnī
Perfect	posuisse	positus esse
Future	positūrus esse	positum īrī

PARTICIPLE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	pōnens	—
Perfect	—	positus, -a, um
Future	positūrus, -a, um	pōnendus, -a, um

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Accusative	positum
Ablative	positū

GERUND (Active Voice)

Genitive	pōnendī
Dative	pōnendō
Accusative	pōnendum
Ablative	pōnendō

56. THIRD-IŌ CONJUGATION

Active principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take

Passive principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum, be taken

N.B.: For sample translations of each tense, infinitives, participles, etc., see amō (§53).

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		Present	
Sing.	capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
	capis	capiās	caperis or -re	capiāris or -re
	capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
Plural	capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
	capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
	capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
	Imperfect		Imperfect	

Sing.	capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	capierer
	capiēbās	caperēs	capiēbāris or -re	capiērēris or -re
	capiēbat	caperet	capiēbātur	capiērētur
Plural	capiēbāmus	caperēmus	capiēbāmur	capiērēmur
	capiēbātis	caperētis	capiēbāminī	capiērēminī
	capiēbant	caperent	capiēbantur	capiērentur
	Future		Future	
Sing.	capiam		capiar	
	capiēs		capiēris or -re	
	capiet		capiētur	
Plural	capiēmus		capiēmur	
	capiētis		capiminī	
	capient		capientur	
	Perfect		Perfect	
Sing.	cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sīm
	cēpistī	cēperīs	captus es	captus sīs
	cēpit	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
Plural	cēpimus	cēperīmus	captī sumus	captī sīmus
	cēpistis	cēperītis	captī estis	captī sītis
	cēpērunt or -ēre	cēperint	captī sunt	captī sint
	Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
Sing.	cēperam	cēpisse	captus eram	captus essem
	cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essētis
	cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
Plural	cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	captī erāmus	captī essēmus
	cēperātis	cēpissētis	captī erātis	captī essētis
	cēperant	cēpissent	captī erant	captī essent
	Future Perfect		Future Perfect	

Sing.	cēperō		captus erō	
	cēperis		captus eris	
	cēperit		captus erit	
Plural	cēperimus		captī erimus	
	cēperitis		captī eritis	
	cēperint		captī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
2nd pers. cape	capite	capere	capiminī
Future		Future	
2nd pers. capitō	capitōte	capitor	
3rd pers. capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	capere	capī
Perfect	cēpisse	captus esse
Future	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	capiens	—
Perfect	—	captus, -a, -um
Future	captūrus, -a, -um	capiendus, -a, -um

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Accusative	captum
Ablative	captū

GERUND (Active Voice)	
Genitive	capiendī
Dative	capiendō
Accusative	capiendum
Ablative	capiendō

57. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Active principal parts: sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, perceive

Passive principal parts: sentior, sentīrī, sēnsus sum, be felt, be perceived

N.B.: For sample translations of each tense, infinitives, participles, etc., see amō (§53).

	ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	Present		Present	
Sing.	sentiō	sentiam	sentior	sentiar
	sentīs	sentīās	sentīris or -re	sentīāris or -re
	sentit	sentiat	sentītur	sentīātur
Plural	sentīmus	sentīāmus	sentīmur	sentīāmur
	sentītis	sentīātis	sentīmīnī	sentīāmīnī
	sentiant	sentiant	sentiantur	sentiantur
	Imperfect		Imperfect	
Sing.	sentiēbam	sentīrem	sentiēbar	sentīrer
	sentiēbās	sentīrēs	sentiēbāris or -re	sentīrēris or -re
	sentiēbat	sentīret	sentiēbātur	sentīrētur
Plural	sentiēbāmus	sentīrēmus	sentiēbāmur	sentīrēmur
	sentiēbātis	sentīrētis	sentiēbāminī	sentīrēmīnī
	sentiēbant	sentīrent	sentiēbantur	sentīrentur

	Future		Future	
Sing.	sentiam		sentiar	
	sentiēs		sentiēris or -re	
	sentiet		sentiētūr	
Plural	sentiēmus		sentiēmur	
	sentiētis		sentiēminī	
	sentient		sentientur	
	Perfect		Perfect	
Sing.	sēnsī	sēnserim	sēnsus sum	sēnsus sīm
	sēnsistī	sēnserīs	sēnsus es	sēnsus sīs
	sēnsit	sēnserit	sēnsus est	sēnsus sit
Plural	sēnsimus	sēnserīmus	sēnsī sumus	sēnsī sīmus
	sēnsistis	sēnserītis	sēnsī estis	sēnsī sītis
	sēnsērunt or -ēre	sēnserint	sēnsī sunt	sēnsī sint
	Pluperfect		Pluperfect	
Sing.	sēnseram	sēnsissem	sēnsus eram	sēnsus essem
	sēnserās	sēnsissēs	sēnsus erās	sēnsus essētis
	sēnserat	sēnsisset	sēnsus erat	sēnsus esset
Plural	sēnserāmus	sēnsissēmus	sēnsī erāmus	sēnsī essēmus
	sēnserātis	sēnsissētis	sēnsī erātis	sēnsī essētis
	sēnserant	sēnsissent	sēnsī erant	sēnsī essent
	Future Perfect		Future Perfect	
Sing.	sēnserō		sēnsus erō	
	sēnseris		sēnsus eris	
	sēnserit		sēnsus erit	
Plural	sēnserimus		sēnsī erimus	
	sēnseritis		sēnsī eritis	
	sēnserint		sēnsī erunt	

IMPERATIVE			
ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SING.	PLURAL	SING.	PLURAL
Present		Present	
2nd pers. sentī	sentīte	sentīre	sentīminī
Future		Future	
2nd pers. sentītō	sentītōte	sentītōr	
3rd pers. sentītō	sentiantō	sentītōr	sentiantor

INFINITIVE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	sentīre	sentīrī
Perfect	sēnsisse	sēnsus esse
Future	sēnsūrus esse	sēnsum īrī

PARTICIPLE		
	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
Present	sentiens	—
Perfect	—	sēnsus, -a, -um
Future	sēnsūrus, -a, -um	sentiendus, -a, -um

SUPINE (Active Voice)	
Accusative	sēnsum
Ablative	sēnsū

GERUND (Active Voice)	
Genitive	sentiendī
Dative	sentiendō
Accusative	sentiendum
Ablative	sentiendō

CONTRACTED FORMS

58. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels brought together as a result contract. Such forms are sometimes called “syncopated.”

- a. Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī* and other tenses based on the same stem sometimes (seem to) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *amāsti* for *amāvistī*; *amāsse* for *amāvisse*; *delērunt* for *delēvērunt*.

- a. Perfects in *-īvī* and other tenses based on the same stem sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the combination of vowels resulting from this is *iis*, it usually contracts to *īs*.

Examples: *audiī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audisse* for *audīvisse*.

DEPONENT VERBS

59. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle remains passive in meaning, and the perfect participle is sometimes passive in meaning. On the other hand, they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

In the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative, the following verbs have the same forms that the verbs in their corresponding conjugation outlined above (§§53–57) have in the passive voice.

	hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge	vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear	sequor, sequi, secutus sum, follow	patior, pati, passus sum, suffer	partior, partiri, partitus sum, share
	1st (§53)	2nd (§54)	3rd (§55)	3rd-iō (§56)	4th (§57)
INFINITIVE					

Present	hortārī	verērī	sequī	patī	partīrī
Perfect	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secutus esse	passus esse	partītus esse
Future	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secutūrus esse	passūrus esse	partītūrus esse
PARTICIPLE					
Present	hortāns	verēns	sequens	patiens	partiēns
Perfect	hortātus	veritus	secutus	passus	partītus
Future	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	passūrus	partītūrus
Future passive	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	patiendus	partiendus
GERUND					
	hortandī, -ō etc.	verendī, -ō etc.	sequendī, -ō etc.	patiendī, -ō etc.	partiendī, -ō etc.
SUPINE					
	hortātum, -ū	veritum, -ū	secutum, -ū	passum, -ū	partītum, -ū

60. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem and passive forms for the tenses based on the perfect stem.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, rejoice

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed

fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust

PERIPHRASTIC CONSTRUCTIONS

61. Active periphrastic constructions express thoughts about future or intended action. They are formed by combining the future active participle with the verb sum:

Present: amātūrus sum, I am about to love, I intend to love

Imperfect: amātūrus eram, I was about to love, I intended to love, etc.

62. Passive periphrastic constructions express obligation or necessity. They are formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb sum:

Present: amandus sum, I am to be loved, I must be loved, I have to be loved

Imperfect: amandus eram, I was to be loved, I had to be loved, etc.

- a. The agent is generally expressed in the dative case; e.g., *Bellum Caesarī agendum erat*. The war had to be waged by Caesar.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

63. For the conjugation of sum, see §52. Sum is conjugated in the same way when combined in compounds with the prepositions ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, and super. Praesum has a present participle: praesēns.
64. In the compound absum, sum is conjugated in the same way, but ā is used instead of ab before f, which yields āfuī, āfutūrus, etc. There is a present participle: absēns.
65. In the compound prōsum, sum is conjugated in the same way, but the preposition prō has its original form prōd before all forms of sum beginning with e, as in prōdesse and prōderam. The present tense is: prōsum, prōdes, prōdest; prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.
66. Possum, be able, can, is a compound of pot- and sum.

Principal parts: possum, posse, potuī, be able, can

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	possum, potes, potest possumus, potestis, possunt	possim, possīs, possit possīmus, possītis, possint
Imperfect	poteram	possem
Future	poterō	
Perfect	potuī	potuerim
Pluperfect	potueram	potuissem
Future Perfect	potuerō	
	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Present	posse	potēns
Perfect	potuisse	—

67. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, carry

ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	ferō, fers, fert ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram, ferās, ferat ferāmus, ferātis, ferant
Imperfect	ferēbam, ferēbās, ferēbat ferēbāmus, ferēbātis, ferēbant	ferrem, ferrēs, ferret ferrēmus, ferrētis, ferrent
Future	feram, ferēs, feret ferēmus, ferētis, ferent	
Perfect	tulī	tulerim
Pluperfect	tuleram	tulissem
Future Perfect	tulerō	

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, feriminī, feruntur	ferar, ferāris, ferātur ferāmur, ferāminī, ferantur
Imperfect	ferēbar, ferēbāris, ferēbātur ferēbāmur, ferēbāminī, ferēbantur	ferrer, ferrēris, ferrētur ferrēmur, ferrēminī, ferrentur
Future	ferar, ferēris, ferētur ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur	
Perfect	lātus sum	lātus sim
Pluperfect	lātus eram	lātus essem
Future Perfect	lātus erō	

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
IMPERATIVE				
Present	fer	forte	ferre	feriminī
Future	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	fertuntō	fertor	feruntor
INFINITIVE				
Present	ferre		ferri	
Perfect	tulisse		lātus esse	
Future	lātūrus esse		lātum iri	
PARTICIPLE				
Present	ferēns		—	
Perfect	—		lātus, -a, -um	
Future	lātūrus, -a, um		ferendus, -a, um	

68.

volō, velle, voluī, be willing

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, be unwilling

mālō, mälle, māluī, prefer

INDICATIVE			
Present	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
Imperfect	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
Future	volam	nōlam	mālam
Perfect	voluī	nōluī	māluī
Pluperfect	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
Future Perfect	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
SUBJUNCTIVE			
Present	velim, velīs, velit velīmus, velītis, velint	nōlim, nōlīs, nōlit nōlīmus, nōlītis, nōlint	mālim, mālīs, mālit mālīmus, mālītis, mālint
Imperfect	vellem, vellēs, vellet vellēmus, vellētis, vellent	nollem, nollēs, nollet nollēmus, nollētis, nollent	mallem, mallēs, mallet mallēmus, mallētis, mallent
Perfect	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
Pluperfect	voluissē	nōluissē	māluissem
IMPERATIVE			
Present		nōlī nōlīte	

Future		nōlītō nōlītōte	
		nōlītō nōluntō	
INFINITIVE			
Present	velle	nōlle	mālle
Perfect	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
PARTICIPLE			
Present	volēns	nōlēns	

69. Fīō, be made, be done, become, happen, supplies the irregular passive of faciō, make. The vowel ī appears before all vowels except before the vowel e when e appears in the combination -er. In this case, ī becomes ĭ.

Principal parts: fīō, fierī, factus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	fīō, fīs, fit fīmus, fītis, fiunt	fīam, fīās, fīat fīāmus, fīātis, fīant
Imperfect	fīēbam, fīēbās, fīēbat fīēbāmus, fīēbātis, fīēbant	fierem, fierēs, fieret fierēmus, fierētis, fierent
Future	fīam, fīēs, fiet fīēmus, fīētis, fient	
Perfect	factus sum	factus sim
Pluperfect	factus eram	factus essem
Future Perfect	factus erō	
IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
Pres. fī, fīte	Pres. fierī	
	Perf. factus esse	Perf. factus, -a, -um

70. eō, ĭre, ĭī, itum, go

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	eō, īs, it īmus, ītis, eunt	eam, eās, eat eāmus, eātis, eant
Imperfect	ībam, ībās, ībat ībāmus, ībātis, ībant	īrem, īrēs, īret īrēmus, īrētis, īrent
Future	ībō, ībis, ībit ībimus, ībitis, ībunt	
Perfect	īī (for īvī)	ierim
Pluperfect	ieram	iissem or īssem
Future Perfect	ierō	
IMPERATIVE	INFINITIVE Active unless marked passive	PARTICIPLE
Pres. ī, īte	Pres.: īre Pres. passive: īrī	Pres. iēns (Gen. euntis)
Fut. ītō ītōte ītō euntō	Perf. iisse or īsse	
	Fut. itūrus esse	Fut. itūrus, -a, -um
GERUND		SUPINE
eundī, etc.		itum, -ū

- a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, *i* usually contracts to *ī* before *s*.

Resources for Further Study

Basic grammar and syntax review

For self-study, revision, and review, *Wheelock's Latin* is excellent. "Wheelock," as the work is universally known among Latin students, combines concise explanations with thorough coverage of Latin morphology and syntax. Another helpful feature of this text is that it includes extra practice exercises with an answer key. This feature allows self-study students to check their work. Supplementary workbooks and readers, as well as a dedicated website, offer additional practice and study opportunities.

Wheelock's Latin, by Frederic M. Wheelock, 7th ed. rev. by Richard A. LaFleur, New York: Collins Reference, 2011. ISBN: 9780061997228.

More information is available at the official "Wheelock's Latin" website: <http://www.wheelockslatin.com>.

Vocabulary building

Anyone with a computer, smart phone, or tablet can find sites and apps for studying Latin vocabulary, but a highly effective low-tech option is still available. Vis-Ed produces a box of 1,000 flash cards that cover basic Latin vocabulary. These cards include essential morphological information, including the principal parts of verbs, the genitives and genders of nouns, the nominative forms of adjectives, and of course, English meanings, all in a handy format that allows students to build vocabulary at whatever pace suits them. Additional information is available at <http://www.vis-ed.com/>.

Latin Vocabulary Cards, by the Visual Education Association, Springfield, OH: Vis-Ed, 1997. ISBN: 9781556370113.

Roman authors in Latin: First readings

The student who wishes to read Latin authors in the original has almost countless choices. The following selections are offered with an eye to easing the transition from guided reading to reading on one's own.

Jerome's translation of the Bible is always a good choice. Jerome translated the Bible for an audience who would have had trouble with the classical Latin of Caesar's and Cicero's day, and for this reason, the Vulgate (as it's commonly called) is an especially good transitional text. Jerome's translations aims to facilitate understanding, and if you already know the stories, so much the better; you will read more Latin more quickly, thus acquiring a feel for Latin syntax, as well as a larger vocabulary.

Biblia Sacra (Vulgate: Bible in Latin), ed. by Robert Weber, 5th ed. rev. by Roger Gryson et al. Stuttgart: Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, 2007 [1969]. ISBN: 9783438053039.

For the student who wishes to read classical Latin authors, the best first step is a transitional reader. Bolchazy-Carducci offers six authors in the *Legamus* ("Let's Read!") series: Caesar, Catullus, Cicero, Horace, Ovid, and Vergil. These readers feature grammar and syntax review, practice exercises, background essays, and extensive notes and vocabulary that help students make the transition to reading classical Roman authors in the original and unadapted Latin. Self-study students should also consider acquiring the *Teacher's Guide*, which provides answers to the practice exercises, translations, and extra guidance. Of special interest to students of this course may be:

Catullus: A Legamus Transitional Reader, by Sean Smith, Wauconda, IL: Bolchazy-Carducci Publishers, 2006. ISBN: 9780865166349.

Caesar: A Legamus Transitional Reader, by Rose Williams and Hans-Friedrich Mueller, Wauconda, IL: Bolchazy Carducci Publishers, 2013. ISBN: 9780865167339.

Caesar: Legamus Transitional Reader: Teacher's Guide, by Rose Williams and Hans-Friedrich Mueller, Wauconda, IL: Bolchazy Carducci Publishers, 2013. ISBN: 9780865167360.

Additional information about the authors in the *Legamus* series is available at <http://www.bolchazy.com/>.

And for those interested in inscriptions, a rewarding place to begin is Tyler Lansford's "walking guide" to the inscriptions of Rome. He includes transcriptions of the Latin text, along with English translations and discussion. As a bonus, after you have finished the book, you can book a flight to Rome to view and read the inscriptions *in situ*:

The Latin Inscriptions of Rome: A Walking Guide, by Tyler Lansford, Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins Press, 2009.

Bilingual editions of Roman authors

For students with an interest in a particular author, it is always helpful to consult a translation. Close translations of most major Latin authors may be found in the bilingual editions of the Loeb Classical Library, published by Harvard University Press. The original Latin appears on the left-hand page, and the corresponding English translation on the right-hand page. This is very helpful, but please bear in mind that these editions do not provide any additional help. They do not provide vocabulary or extensive commentary. More information is available at <http://www.hup.harvard.edu/>.

Latin literature online

The *Perseus Digital Library*, edited by Gregory R. Crane, Tufts University, offers the works of most major Roman authors through a freely accessible website. These texts are hyperlinked, so that readers may click on individual words for help in parsing. Additional links bring access to dictionary entries, translations, and commentaries. It would be difficult to exaggerate how helpful *Perseus* can be for readers trying to make their way through a Latin text. More information is available at <http://www.perseus.tufts.edu>.

Also worthy of mention is *Lacus Curius*, a site that offers a short introduction to Latin inscriptions in three levels: 13 "easy" inscriptions, 10 inscriptions of "medium" difficulty, and 5 classified as "hard." Each inscription includes a photograph, a transcription, and an answer key. *Lacus Curtius* also provides a wealth of information about ancient Rome more generally. The short introduction to epigraphy (the study of inscriptions) may be found here: <http://penelope.uchicago.edu/Thayer/E/Roman/Texts/Inscriptions/home.html>.

Basic reference works

Despite the easy access we now enjoy to electronic resources, it is also sometimes nice to have a good dictionary and a reference grammar. A good dictionary can help explain an unusual meaning, and a good reference grammar can explain an odd form, a mood, or an unusual turn of phrase. And both can supply endlessly fascinating information if one cares to explore vocabulary or syntax in depth.

There is really only one smaller dictionary worth purchasing, and that is William Smith's *Chambers Murray Latin-English Dictionary*. It provides good coverage beyond a wide range of Latin authors and, despite its compact size, a surprising range of examples of Latin usage. Most smaller Latin dictionaries are mere word lists. This dictionary delivers much more in a small format and at a reasonable price:

Chambers Murray Latin-English Dictionary, by William Smith and John Lockwood, Edinburgh & London: Chambers & Murray Publishers, 1994 [1933]. ISBN: 9780550190031.

For those who want a large dictionary with excellent coverage of both classical and Christian Latin, then Lewis and Short's *Latin Dictionary* is an excellent choice. The even larger *Oxford Latin Dictionary* does not include Christian Latin (although it is now the standard authority in English on pre-Christian Latin). Lewis and Short has entered the public domain. It may be accessed online and downloaded without charge from: <http://athirdway.com/glossa/>. Lewis and Short is also still available in print:

A Latin Dictionary: Founded on Andrews' Edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary, by Charlton T. Lewis and Charles Short, Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1956 [1879]. ISBN: 9780198642015.

There are various reference grammars available, and Latin teachers are often partisans of one or another. Many advocate Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar* on the grounds that Gildersleeve is the most thorough. I would agree with that assessment, and I prefer using Gildersleeve myself. However, unless one already knows Latin fairly well, I would not recommend Gildersleeve as a first stop. I generally recommend that students in search of more detailed

information about Latin syntax begin with Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar* and that they reserve Gildersleeve for deeper inquiries after they have consulted Allen and Greenough.

Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar, by James B. Greenough and J. H. Allen, rev. by G. L. Kittredge et al. Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 2006 [1903]. ISBN: 9780486448060.

Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar, by B. L. Gildersleeve and G. Lodge, Mineola, NY: Dover Publications, 2009 [1894]. ISBN: 9780486469126.